

Ektron

# Ektron CMS200/300 User Manual

Version 4.5, Revision 3

Ektron® Inc. 5 Northern Blvd., Suite 6 Amherst, NH 03031 Tel: +1 603-594-0249 Fax: +1 603-594-0258 Email: sales@ektron.com http://www.ektron.com

Copyright 2004 Ektron®, Inc. All rights reserved.

EKTRON is a registered trademark of Ektron, Inc.

Version 4.5, Revision 3, July 9, 2004

For updated versions of this manual, please visit:

http://www.ektron.com/download\_center.cfm

#### **EKTRON, INC. SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**

#### \*\* READ THIS BEFORE LOADING SOFTWARE\*\*

YOUR RIGHT TO USE THE PRODUCT DELIVERED IS SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET OUT IN THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. USING THIS PRODUCT SIGNIFIES YOUR AGREEMENT TO THESE TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT, DO NOT DOWNLOAD.

CUSTOMER should carefully read the following terms and conditions before using the software program(s) contained herein (the "Software"). Downloading and/or using the Software or copying the Software onto CUSTOMER'S computer hard drive indicates CUSTOMER'S acceptance of these terms and conditions. If CUSTOMER does not agree with the terms of this agreement, CUSTOMER should not download.

Ektron, Inc. ("Ektron") grants, and the CUSTOMER accepts, a nontransferable and nonexclusive License to use the Software on the following terms and conditions:

1. Right to use: The Software is licensed for use only in delivered code form. Each copy of the Software is licensed for use only on a single URL. Each license is valid for the number of seats listed below (the "Basic Package"). Any use of the Software beyond the number of authorized seats contained in the Basic Package without paying additional license fees as provided herein shall cause this license to terminate. Should CUSTOMER wish to add seats beyond the seats licensed in the Basic Package, the CUSTOMER may add seats on a block basis at the then current price for additional seats (see product pages for current price). The Basic Package are as follows:

Ektron eMPower for ColdFusion -- Licensed for ten seats (10 named users) per URL.

Ektron CMS100 -- Licensed for five seats (5 named users) per URL.

Ektron CMS200 -- Licensed for ten seats (10 named users) per URL.

Ektron CMS300 -- Licensed for ten seats (10 named users) per URL.

Ektron eWebEditPro -- Licensed for ten seats (10 named users) per URL.

Ektron eWebEditPro+XML — Licensed for ten seats (10 named users) per URL.

Ektron eWebWP - Licensed for unlimited seats per URL.

For purposes of this section, the term "seat" shall mean an individual user provided access to the capabilities of the Software.

The CUSTOMER may not modify, alter, reverse engineer, disassemble, or decompiler the Software. This software product is licensed, not sold.

2. Duration: This License shall continue so long as CUSTOMER uses the Software in compliance with this License. Should CUSTOMER breach any of its obligations hereunder, CUSTOMER agrees to return all copies of the Software and this License upon notification and demand by Ektron.

3. Copyright: The Software (including any images, "applets," photographs, animations, video, audio, music and text incorporated into the Software) as well as any accompanying written materials (the "Documentation") is owned by Ektron or its suppliers, is protected by United States copyright laws and international treaties, and contains confidential information and trade secrets. CUSTOMER agrees to protect the confidentiality of the Software and Documentation. CUSTOMER agrees that it will not provide a copy of this Software or Documentation nor divulge any proprietary information of Ektron; CUSTOMER shall use its best efforts to see that any user of the Software Incensed hereunder complies with this license.

4. Limited Warranty: Ektron warrants solely that the medium upon which the Software is delivered will be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal, proper and intended usage for a period of three (3) months from the date of receipt. Ektron does not warrant the use of the Software will be uninterrupted or error free, nor that program errors will be corrected. This limited warranty shall not apply to any error or failure resulting from (i) machine error, (ii) Customer's failure to follow operating instructions, (iii) negligence or accident, or (iv) modifications to the Software by any person or entity other than Company. In the event of a breach of warranty, Customer's sole and exclusive remedy, is repair of all or any portion of the Software. If such remedy fails of its essential purpose, Customer's sole remedy and Ektron's maximum liability shall be a refund of the paid purchase price for the defective Products only. This limited warranty is only valid if Ektron receives written notice of breach of warranty within thirty days after the warranty period expires.

5. Limitation of Warranties and Liability: THE SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION ARE SOLD "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY WARRANTIES AS TO THE PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTIBILITY, DESIGN, OR OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE. NO WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE IS OFFERED. EXCEPT AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 4, ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS AND IMPLIED ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED.

NEITHER COMPANY NOR ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF BUSINESS OR GOODWILL, LOSS OF DATA OR USE OF DATA, INTERRUPTION OF BUSINESS NOR FOR ANY OTHER INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND UNDER OR ARISING OUT OF, OR IN ANY RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT, HOWEVER, CAUSED, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF WARRANTY, BREACH OR REPUDIATION OF CONTRACT, TORT, NEGLIGENCE, OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF COMPANY OR ITS REPRESENTATIVES HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS. 6. Miscellaneous: This License Agreement, the License granted hereunder, and the Software may not be assigned or in any way transferred without the prior written consent of Ektron. This Agreement and its performance and all claims arising from the relationship between the parties contemplated herein shall be governed by, construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New Hampshire without regard to conflict of laws principles thereof. The parties agree that any action brought in connection with this Agreement shall be maintained only in a court of competent subject matter jurisdiction located in the State of New Hampshire or in any court to which appeal thereform may be taken. The parties hereby consent to the exclusive personal jurisdiction of such courts in the State of New Hampshire for all such purposes. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is specifically excluded from governing this License. If any provision of this License is to be held unenforceable, such holding will not affect the validity of the other provisions hereof. Failure of a party to enforce any provision of this Agreement shall not constitute or be construed as a waiver of such provision or of the right to enforce such provision. If you fail to comply with any term of this License, YOUR LICENSE IS AUTOMATICALLY TERMINATED. This License represents the entire understanding between the parties with respect to its subject matter.

YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, THAT YOU UNDERSTAND THIS AGREEMENT, AND UNDERSTAND THAT BY CONTINUING THE INSTALLATION OF THE SOFTWARE, BY LOADING OR RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, OR BY PLACING OR COPYING THE SOFTWARE ONTO YOUR COMPUTER HARD DRIVE, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT'S TERMS AND CONDITIONS. YOU FURTHER AGREE THAT, EXCEPT FOR WRITTEN SEPARATE AGREEMENT'S BETWEEN EKTRON AND YOU, THIS AGREEMENT IS A COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF THE RIGHTS AND LIABILITIES OF THE PARTIES.

Copyright 1999 - 2003 Ektron, Inc. All rights reserved.

LA10031, Revision 1.4

# **Table of Contents**

Author's Note	i
Introduction to Ektron CMS200/300	1
What is a Content Block?	1
Workflow in Ektron CMS200/300	2
Editing a Content Block	3
The Lifecycle of a Content Block	4
Logging In and Out	6
Prerequisites	
Logging into the Sample Web Site	
Site Preview Logging Out of the Sample Site	
Logging Out of the Sample Site	9
The Button Menu	11
Meaning of Border Color	
Preview	
The Workarea	14
Accessing the Workarea	14
Understanding the Smart Desktop	15
Navigating Within the Smart Desktop	17
Workarea Toolbar	22
Working with Folders and Content Blocks	27
Viewing a Folder	
Viewing a Content Block	
Adding a Content Block	
Editing a Content Block	
Deleting a Content Block	
Adding Sub-Folders	
Deleting Folders	
Scheduling Content to Begin and End	
How Does It Work?	
Setting a Start Date	47

	Setting an End Date on a Content Block	50
Adding	a Content Block Summary	53
_	Creating Summaries	54
Adding	or Editing Metadata	59
_	What is Metadata?	59
Approvi	ng/Declining Content Blocks	62
	Approve/Decline One Content Block	63
	Approve Multiple Content Blocks	
	Example of an Approval Chain	
Viewing	and Restoring Previous Content Blocks	81
Compar	ing Versions of a Content Block	84
	Introduction	
	When Can I Compare Content?	
	The Compare Content Window	
	First Use of the View Content Difference Feature	90
Content	Workflow Reports	91
	Accessing the Reports Folder	91
	Approvals Reports	95
	Checked In Report	96
	Checked Out Report	97
	New Content Report	97
	Submitted Report	97
	Pending Start Date	98
	Expired Content	98
Library	Folder	99
	Terms Used in this Chapter	
	Terms Used in this Chapter	
	Accessing The Library	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	100
	Accessing The Library	100 102
	Accessing The Library Searching the Library	100 102 104
	Accessing The Library Searching the Library Files	100 102 104 117
	Accessing The Library Searching the Library Files. Hyperlinks	100 102 104 117 117

Finding Collections	
Viewing a Collection	
Creating a Collection	
Editing Content Blocks in a Collection	
Reordering Collections List	
Editing Collection Information	
Deleting a Collection	139
Working with Calendars	140
Understanding Calendars	
Accessing the List of Calendars	
Viewing a Calendar	
Viewing a Calendar Event	
Adding a Calendar Event	
Adding a New Content Block for a Calendar Event	
Editing Calendar Events	
Deleting Calendar Events	
Updating Your User Profile	
Viewing Your Profile	
Accessing Online Help	167
Searching for Content	171
Search Options	171
Managing Tasks	173
Accessing the Tasks Folder	
Creating a Task	
Viewing a Task	
Editing a Task	
Adding Comments to Tasks	
Deleting A Task	
Attaching a Task to a Content Block	
Task Module Toolbar	
Introduction to eWebeditPro+XML	
Using eWebeditPro+XML	
Organization of this Documentation	
	107
Creating a Simple Web Page	188

Your Finished Web Page Creating the Sample Web Page	
Toolbar Buttons	192
Selecting Text Applying Formatting Attributes to Text	192 102
Table of Toolbar Buttons and Drop-Down Lists	
Customizing Your Toolbar	207
Removing Or Adding Menus	
Removing or Adding Menu Items	
Restoring Toolbars	
Rearranging the Menus on a Toolbar	211
Creating a New Menu	211
Moving a Menu Off the Toolbar	213
Changing the Menu's Orientation	213
The Context Sensitive Menu	215
Using eWebeditPro+XML's Advanced Features	218
Copying from Other Applications	
Finding and Replacing Text	220
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text	220 220
Finding and Replacing Text	220 220
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options Editing in Microsoft Word	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options. Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents. Inserting Images.	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text. Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents. Inserting Images. Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box.	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options. Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents. Inserting Images.	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text. Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options. Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents. Inserting Images. Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box.	
<ul> <li>Finding and Replacing Text</li> <li>Finding Text</li> <li>Finding and Replacing Text</li> <li>Additional Options on the Dialog Box</li> <li>Checking Spelling</li> <li>Disabling Script Blocking</li> <li>Checking Spelling as You Type</li> <li>Checking Spelling Upon Demand</li> <li>Setting Spell Check Options</li> <li>Editing in Microsoft Word</li> <li>Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document</li> <li>Editing XML Documents</li> <li>Inserting Images</li> <li>Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box</li> <li>Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box</li> <li>Moving an Image to the Server</li> <li>Deleting a Picture</li> </ul>	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text. Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options. Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents. Inserting Images. Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box. Moving an Image to the Server.	
Finding and Replacing Text Finding Text Finding and Replacing Text Additional Options on the Dialog Box Checking Spelling Disabling Script Blocking Checking Spelling as You Type Checking Spelling Upon Demand Setting Spell Check Options Editing in Microsoft Word Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document Editing XML Documents Inserting Images. Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box Moving an Image to the Server Deleting a Picture	

Introduction to Tables	. 280
Creating a Table	281
Deleting a Table	
Inserting a Table within a Table	
Table Dialog Boxes and Menus	
The Insert Table Menu	
The Table Properties Dialog Box	
The Cell Properties Dialog Box	
The Table Context Sensitive Menu	
Manipulating Your Table's Format	
Choosing the Number of Rows and Columns	
Specifying Table Width	
Specifying Horizontal Alignment	
Table Backgrounds	
Setting Table Borders	304
Working with Table Cells	. 308
Specifying the Width of a Cell	308
Inserting a Cell	310
Deleting a Cell	311
Setting a Cell's Border Color	312
Specifying a Cell's Background Color	
Specifying a Background Image for a Cell	
Spanning Rows or Columns	318
Aligning Text Within a Cell	321
Splitting a Cell	
Merging Two Cells	
Word Wrap	
Setting Cell Padding and Spacing	
Using Bookmarks	
Creating a Bookmark	
Changing the Destination Window	
Using Hyperlinks	. 337
Creating a Hyperlink	337
Testing a Hyperlink	340
Creating a Hyperlink to a Location Within a Web Page	
Editing a Hyperlink	
Removing a Hyperlink	
Preventing a URL from Becoming a Hyperlink	
Working with HTML	. 343
Viewing and Editing HTML	343
Inserting HTML	
Cleaning HTML	
Inserting Content from MS Office 2000	346

Section 508 Compliance	347
Moving the Cursor into eWebeditPro+XML	
Using eWebeditPro+XML without a Mouse	
Section 508 Tables	
Editing XML Web Pages	354
A Typical XML Screen	
Custom Tag Menu Options	
Inserting XML Tags	
The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog	
The Insert Custom Tag Dialog Box	
Using the Data Designer	
Introduction	
Differences in eWebeditPro+XML	
Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode	
Designing a Screen	
Inserting a Field Type	
Sample Screen Design	
Data Designer Field Types	
Entering Comments	415
Appendix A: Content Statuses	417
Active Content	
Checked-In Content	
Checked Out Content	
Submitted Content	
Marked for Deletion Content	
Pending Start Date Content	
Staged Content	

# Author's Note

This manual documents both Ektron CMS200 and Ektron CMS300. With the exception of a few features that are labeled CMS300 only, Ektron CMS300 and Ektron CMS200 have the same functionality.

In this manual, some screens show CMS300 in the title bar, and some directory paths mention CMS300, such as C:/Program Files/Ektron/CMS300/Utilities/. If you are using CMS200, substitute 200 for 300 in these cases.

# Introduction to Ektron CMS200/ 300

Using Ektron CMS200/300 to manage Web content is easy once you know the basics of setting up and maintaining your site. This manual explains how to maintain an Ektron CMS200/300 site from a user's point of view. By reading this manual, you will gain an understanding of how Ektron CMS200/300 works.

This section introduces basic concepts that you should understand before beginning to work with Ektron CMS200/300.

# What is a Content Block?

Any Web site consists of several pages. Each page is made up of one or more *blocks* of content. For example, the home page of the sample Web site that is installed with Ektron CMS200/300 is below.



### Lots of new features in Ektron CMS300!

#### **NEW FEATURE: Trinity In-Line Pipe**

Trinitys new pipe and manifold are for rear exhaust engines and are now used in both the Sportster and the cheetah. Both the manifold and pipe are made from new options to our customers. With laser-cut balsa high-guality aluminum. This new pipe is more durable and will withstand a bad crash.

NEW PRODUCT: Introducing the RC Redstar

RC International is proud to introduce the RC Redstar. This new addition to the RC International fleet brings wings and a wing span of 71", this is one plane that has to be seen.

Copyright 2003 Ektron, Inc. Sample Site

After you log in to Ektron CMS200/300, you will see that the page has three content blocks, each surrounded by a border.

# RC International

Home | Products | Support | News | Careers | Search | Calendar

Login | Contact E

#### 🛕 📽 🗅 🗹 😭 😂 👶

### Lots of new features in Ektron CMS300!

[]* [], 🛱 ¶⊂ 🗹 🖆 🗳 🖧	D' D. 🛱 To Ī 2 🖆 😂 🌲
NEW FEATURE: Trinity In-Line Pipe	NEW PRODUCT: Introducing the RC Redstar
engines and are now used in both the Sportster and	RC International is proud to introduce the RC Redstar. This new addition to the RC International fleet brings new options to our customers. With laser-cut balsa wings and a wing span of 71", this is one plane that has to be seen.

Your system administrator controls the design of each page and determines which content blocks appear in which location.

If granted permission by your administrator, you can create new content blocks, and edit or delete existing ones. Most of your work with **Ektron CMS200/300** involves working with content blocks.

## Workflow in Ektron CMS200/300

Organizations typically want a Web site that is updated frequently with the latest information. They also want to decentralize the updating process, so that users with no technical background from any department can make changes. Further, organizations want oversight over those changes to ensure the accuracy of the information, that the content adheres to corporate guidelines, etc.

**Ektron CMS200/300** manages the lifecycle of a content block, from creation through approval and publication. It helps your organization set up a process for overseeing changes to a Web site, indicate a content block's status within that lifecycle, and inform the next person on the list of approvers that it is their turn to review the content block.

# **Editing a Content Block**

## **Finding a Content Block**

A lot of your work involves editing existing content or creating new content. **Ektron CMS200/300** provides three methods for finding content to be updated. You can use whichever method is easiest.

- Navigate through your Web site to the content block you want to edit
- Find the content block through the *Workarea*, which resembles Windows Explorer and lets you find a content block by navigating through a folder tree. *See Also:* "The Workarea" on page 14
- Use the Search button (), which appears on many screens. When clicked, the search button displays a screen that prompts you to enter keywords and then finds content blocks that contain those keywords. *See Also:* "Searching for Content" on page 171

### **The Editing Process**

After you find the content block, you click the Edit button ( $\square$ ) to open it in an editor. Below is an example of a content block in the editor.

e) ا	Ektron CMS300 Edit Content - Microsoft Internet Explorer					
(	Use CMS300 EDIT CONTENT Wednesday, June 09	er: jedit 9, 2004				
	🗃 📴 🔓 🖬 🖬 🗙 tabaa ahaa ahaa ahaa ahaa ahaa ahaa aha	-				
	Title: Trinity In-Line Pipe					
	Comment:					
	Start Date: End Date: 🔤	(				
	🛛 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 🔹 Verdana 🔹 2 (10 pt) 📼 🗛 🖄 🗷 🖳 A					
	X 🗈 🛍 🖹 📓 🛱 👭 41, 🗁 📯 🗠 💛 👐 🕕 🗞 🇞 🚺 🌴 🗕 🔜 🖉 🥅 🕅					
	Ax <sup>2</sup> x <sub>2</sub>   nbsp © ® TM € ; • ⊞ ⊡    @ ??   ] 띂 ☷ 镡 镡   重 喜 ☰ 🧱 😋					
	HOT NEW FEATURE : Trinity In-Line Pipe Trinitys new pipe and manifold are for rear exhaust engines and are now used in both the Sportster and the cheetah. Both the manifold and pipe are made from high-quality aluminum. This new pipe is more durable and will withstand a bad crash.					

The editor resembles popular word processing software. You can enter text, then select it and click a button to change its display properties. For example, you can make text bold, change the color, or copy and paste it. You can also insert images, tables, links to other Web pages and check spelling,

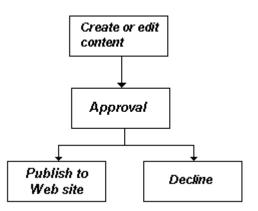
## The Lifecycle of a Content Block

After you edit the content block, you typically submit it for approval by one or more individuals who oversee changes to your Web site. These people can review, edit and approve the change. When the last approver signs off, the new content becomes available on the Web site.

In some cases, you are one of the content approvers. In this case, you receive an email notifying you that a content block needs approval. You look it over, change it as needed, then pass it on to the next approver. If you do not agree with the changes, you can

*decline* the request. In this case, the user who made the edits is informed that the change is not approved.

The following graphic illustrates the content approval cycle.



To help track a content block's position in this workflow, **Ektron CMS200/300** assigns a status to each content block. The status determines what you can do with a content block, and indicates what must occur in order for it to get published to the web site. For more information, see "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417.

# Logging In and Out

This section explains how to log in and out of **Ektron CMS200/300**, and to use the site preview feature.

## Prerequisites

Once your Webmaster or administrator installs Ektron CMS200/ 300, you need the following items before you can use it.

- URL (Web address) of Ektron CMS200/300 Web site
- Username and Password

Once you acquire both, you can log into Ektron CMS200/300 and begin managing your Web site content.

**NOTE** This manual uses the Ektron CMS200/300 sample Web site to demonstrate the product.

## Logging into the Sample Web Site

To access the Ektron CMS200/300 sample site:

- In your Web browser, navigate to the URL of your Ektron CMS200/300 Web site. Your system administrator provides this.
- 2. Click Login at the top right corner of the screen.



#### 3. The login screen appears.

🚰 CM5300 Login Information - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools Help	
🛛 😋 Back 🔹 📀 🖌 😰 🐔 🔎 Search 👷 Favorites 🚳 Media 🥝 😥 - 🛬 🖬	• 🔜 🎗
Address 🗃 http://127.0.0.1/cmssample/login.asp	💌 🄁 Go
RC International	
Home   Products   Support   News   Careers   Search   Calendar	Login   Contact Ektror

Logging into CMS300 is easy. Simply click on the *Login* button below. A pop-up window will appear. Use the username *admin* and the password *admin*. This login will allow you to browse through the administrator's workarea. All the functionality of CMS300 is controlled from this workarea.

NOTE: The Ektron CMS300 sample site has 3 content sections that use XML - RC Cars, RC Planes, and Human Resources. After logging in please use the site navigation or the following links to see how easy it is to work with XML within CMS300.

#### Products

#### Careers

For a complete introduction to the administrator's workarea please refer to the CMS300 Administrator Guide.



- 4. Click the login button.
- 5. The login dialog box appears.

Ektron CM	IS Login - Microsoft I 💶 🗖
Ente	r your username and password.
User:	
Pwd:	
	LOGIN

- 6. Enter your username and password.
- 7. Click the login button.
- 8. The Web page appears.

You can navigate around your Web site as you could before signing in. But now, the content is surrounded by a colored box with small buttons in the top left corner (illustrated below).

## 🕑 🏠 🗍 🗹 😭 🍣 👶

#### HOT NEW FEATURE : Trinity In-Line Pipe

Trinitys new pipe and manifold are for rear exhaust engines and are now used in both the Sportster and the cheetah. Both the manifold and pipe are made from high-quality aluminum. This new pipe is more durable and will withstand a bad crash.

# Site Preview

While logged into Ektron CMS200/300, you can preview the Web site as it would appear to visitors, or view it in Ektron CMS200/300 view.

Button	Name	Description
Preview	Preview On	Content blocks appear as last <i>edited</i> .
Preview	Preview Off	The most recently <i>published</i> versions of content blocks appear. In this mode, colored borders surround content blocks, allowing you to perform tasks on them.

## **Toggling Site Preview**

To toggle site preview on and off, follow these steps.

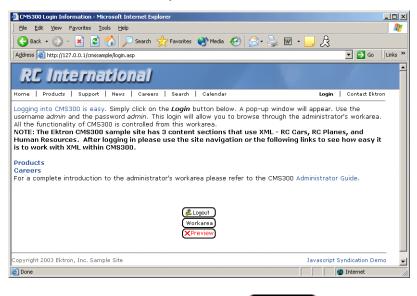
- 1. Navigate to your login screen.
- 2. The logout, workarea, and preview buttons appear.



3. Click on the preview button.



4. The Web site is now in preview mode.



5. To turn preview mode off, click the (Preview) button on the login screen.

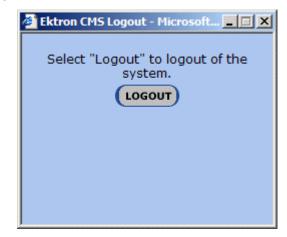
## Logging Out of the Sample Site

To log out of Ektron CMS200/300, follow these steps.

1. Click the Logout button (4) in a content block's button menu,

or click the logout button (

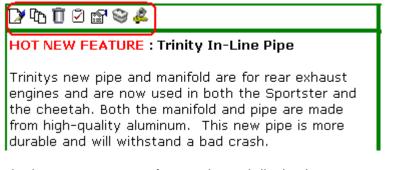
2. The Logout confirmation box appears:



- 3. Click the logout button.
- 4. You return to the Web page from which you logged out. However, it is in standard view, not Ektron CMS200/300 view.

# The Button Menu

After you sign in to **Ektron CMS200/300**, you will notice a button menu in the top left corner of every content block (circled in red below).



Use the button menu to perform tasks and display important information. The menu buttons change depending on the status of the content block or your permission level for the content block. *See Also:* "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417.

#### **NOTE** Permissions are explained in the **Ektron CMS200/300** Administrator manual.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
B	Approve	Approve or decline a request to publish or delete a content block	"Approving/Declining Content Blocks" on page 62
$\checkmark$	Assign Task	Assign a task to a user	"Managing Tasks" on page 173
Û	Delete	Submit request to delete content block	"Deleting a Content Block" on page 42
	Edit	Check out content block for editing	"Editing a Content Block" on page 39

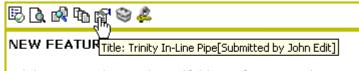
The following table describes each button that may appear.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
&	Logout	Log out of Ektron CMS200/300 view of Web site	"Logging Out of the Sample Site" on page 9
D.	Preview	Preview content block before it is published	"Preview" on page 13
i≊ <sup>1</sup>	Properties	Open content block's View Content page	"Viewing a Content Block" on page 31
R	View Content Difference	Display differences between a previous and published version of content block	"Comparing Versions of a Content Block" on page 84
Ĵ)	View History	ry Open View History area, where you can view previous versions of content block "Viewing and R Previous Content on page 81"	
<i>(</i> ))	Workarea	Opens Workarea, from which you can perform all Ektron CMS200/300 page 14 tasks.	

## Meaning of Border Color

Each border color indicates the status of the content block. These colors are explained in "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417.

To see a more detailed status of any Ektron CMS200/300 content block, hover your cursor over the properties button. If you do, the content block's title and current status appear (illustrated below).



Trinitys new pipe and manifold are for rear exhaust engines and are now used in both the Sportster and

## Preview

The Preview button lets you preview the currently checked in content. When you click the button, a new window opens with the content block that has been edited but not yet published. You can see how the content block will appear on the Web site.

You can only preview a content block that you checked in.

# The Workarea

The Workarea is a central screen from which you can perform all activities within **Ektron CMS200/300**. From it, you can

- access the Smart Desktop
- view the system's top level folders
- navigate through the folder structure
- perform tasks on content blocks within a folder

## Accessing the Workarea

To access your workarea, follow these steps.

1. Click the workarea button at the bottom of the screen

Workarea

or click the workarea button ( $^{\bigotimes}$ ) in a content block's button menu.

2. The workarea appears.

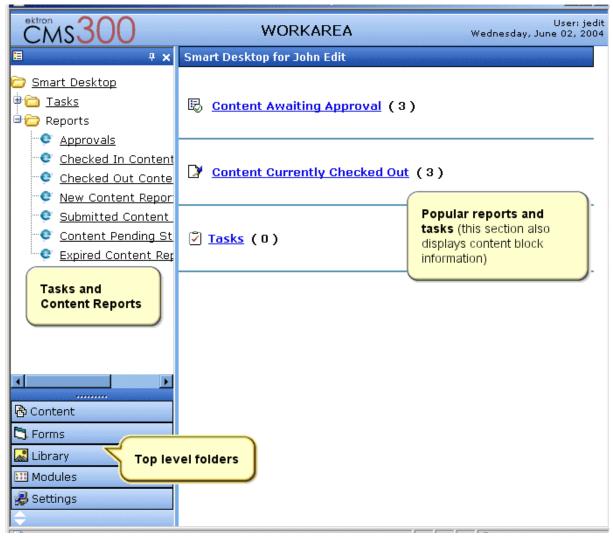
🚰 Ektron CMS300 Workarea for John Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🔍		
Sktron 200	Workarea	
<b>≡</b>	Smart Desktop for John Edit	
<mark>≥</mark> 192.168.0.171/СМS в̂ <mark>≧</mark> <u>Content</u>	😨 <u>Content Awaiting Approval</u> (0)	
	Content Currently Checked Out (2)	
	🖉 <u>Tasks</u> (0)	
▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲		
S Forms		
Library		
III Modules		
🛃 Administrate		
🙆 Done	🔲 👘 🔮 Internet	

### **Closing the Workarea**

To close the workarea, click ≚ in the upper right corner of the window. When you close the workarea, you return to the Ektron CMS200/300 view of your Web site. You do not exit Ektron CMS200/300.

## Understanding the Smart Desktop

Whenever you access your Workarea, the first screen to appear is the *Smart Desktop*. It consists of three main sections, illustrated below.



- The right frame displays
  - Content awaiting approval content blocks that you need to approve before they proceed to the next approver or be published if you are the final approver. See Also: "Approvals Reports" on page 95
  - Content currently checked out all content in a checkedout status. This content cannot be edited by other users until the user who checked it out or the system administrator checks it in. See Also: "Checked Out Report" on page 97

- A list of tasks assigned to you See Also: "Managing Tasks" on page 173
- **NOTE** The number to the right of each category lists the quantity of content blocks in that category for you. When you click an item, up to five content blocks in a category appear. To perform tasks on those content blocks, and to view additional blocks in that category, click the category.

If you select a folder from the left frame, the right frame displays content blocks in that folder. If you select a content block from the list, information about it fills the right frame.

- The top left frame displays the folder tree for the Smart Desktop folder, which has two sub-folders
  - Tasks (See "Managing Tasks" on page 173)
  - Content Reports (see "Content Workflow Reports" on page 91)
- To bottom left frame displays the top-level folders in Ektron CMS200/300. Your display may be different depending on whether or not you are an administrator.
  - Forms folder
  - "Working with Folders and Content Blocks" on page 27
  - "Library Folder" on page 99
  - "Modules Folder" on page 122
  - Administrate folder, which includes "Updating Your User Profile" on page 163 and "Accessing Online Help" on page 167

## Navigating Within the Smart Desktop

**Ektron CMS200/300**'s top level folders appear in the lower left corner of the Smart Desktop. Use them to access all other folders.

To open any top level folder, click it. When you do, it appears in the frame above. Typically, you would a click top-level folder to see its sub-folders, then click a sub-folder to see its content blocks.

From the Smart Desktop, you can also:

- "Modify the Display of Top Level Folders" on page 18
- Use "The Smart Desktop Button" on page 19
- "Hide the Left Panel of the Workarea" on page 19

## Modify the Display of Top Level Folders

The display of top level folders can appear in two formats:

- a full button with an icon and text (<sup>B Content</sup>)
- just an icon on the bottom of the left frame



The full display is easier to see, but the icon format allows more space for the folder structure. You can decide which option best suits your needs.

### Switching Between Full Buttons and Icons

By default, top-level folders appear as full buttons. To switch the display of all folders to icons, double click the down arrow circled below.



To switch back to full buttons, double click the up arrow circled above.

You can also switch the display of the folders one at a time by clicking the up or down arrow.

As an alternative method of switching the display, you can

1. Place the cursor on the bar above the display of top-level folders. (The bar has several dots in the middle.)

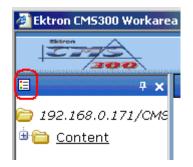
🗟 Content
🕄 Forms
🔜 Library
🎞 Modules
🥵 Administrate
÷

2. When the cursor turns to a double headed arrow, drag it to the bottom bar.

To return the display to full buttons, drag the same bar above.

### The Smart Desktop Button

Click the button in the top left corner (circled below) to return to the Smart Desktop from wherever you are working in **Ektron CMS200/300**.



## Hide the Left Panel of the Workarea

You can hide the left frame of the Workarea to provide more space for working in the right frame. Below is an example of the Workarea with a minimized left frame. Note that you cannot see the folder display in the left frame.

🖹 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for John Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 >		
Sktron 200	Workarea	
View Content "abc	test"	
🖻 🗛 🕀 🕵 🗟	≩ ☞ ←	
Content Title:	abc test	
Content ID:	25	
Status:	Checked Out	
Last User To Edit:		
Last Edit Date:		
Start Date:	[None Specified]	
End Date:	[None Specified]	
	11-May-2004 10:02 AM	
pproval Method: Do Not Force All Approvers		
	🖉 jedit 🖉 admin	
XML Configuration:	[None Specified] HTML Content Assumed(inherited)	
Path	\abc	
Content Searchable	:Yes	
History Comment:		
riistory comment.		
Metadata:		
Title:		
Keywords:		
<u>)</u>	💓 Internet	

To minimize the left frame, click the white X near the top of the left frame.



The left frame remains minimized until you move the cursor to the left of the bar circled below.

🗿 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for John Edit - Microsoft Internet Exp		
Extrem Carros Carros	Workar	
View Content "abc	test"	
🖻 🗛 🕀 🕵 🤅	≩ ☞ ←	
Content Title:	abc test	
Content ID:	25	
Status:	Checked Out	
Last User To Edit:	admin	
Last Edit Date:	11-May-2004 10:02 AM	
Start Date:	[None Specified]	
End Date:	[None Specified]	
Date Created:	11-May-2004 10:02 AM	
Approval Method:	Do Not Force All Approvers	
Approvals:	😴 jedit 😴 admin	
XML Configuration:	[None Specified] HTML Content Ass	
Path	\abc	
¢ontent Searchable	:Yes	
T		

### **Using Auto Hide**

The Workarea screen also provides an *autohide* feature, which quickly switches between full right frame view and combination right-left frame view.

When autohide is turned on, the left frame is minimized unless you place the cursor to the left of the bar circled above. If you place the cursor there, the left frame appears. As soon as you move the cursor back to the right frame, the left frame disappears.

To turn on the autohide feature, click the push pin icon near the top of the left frame.



When you do, the push pin turns 90 degrees to indicate autohide is on.



To turn off autohide, move the cursor to the left frame and click the push pin icon. When you do, the push pin returns to its original position.

# Workarea Toolbar

Throughout the workarea, a toolbar appears at the top of the screen and contains buttons for performing actions. This section explains the buttons' functions to help you become more proficient with Ektron CMS200/300.

Button	Name	Description
¢	Add	Adds items in several places.
<b>.</b>	Add Calendar Event	Accesses the add calendar event screen in the workarea. See Also: "" on page 124
¢	Add Content Block	In a content folder, opens the editor and allows you to create a new content block. See Also: "Adding a Content Block" on page 36
<mark>г</mark> у	Add Content Folder	In a content folder, allows you to create a sub-folder to further organize your content blocks. See Also: "Adding Sub-Folders" on page 43
Ĩ.	Add Library Item	In the library folder, allows you to upload an image or file, or add a hyperlink or quicklink to use in content. See Also: "Library Folder" on page 99

Button	Name	Description
M	Add Metadata Definition	In the Metadata section of the workarea, allows you to add another metadata definition to your content block. <i>See Also:</i> "Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59
3	Add Task	Assign task to a user. See Also: "Managing Tasks" on page 173
2	Approvals	View approval chain for folder or content block. See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198
8	Approve	Approve content that awaits your approval. See Also: "Preview" on page 13
B	Approve All	In the approvals folder, approves all content awaiting your approval with one click.
←	Back	Return to previous screen.
	Calendar	Lets you choose when content will go live. See Also: "" on page 124
×	Cancel	Cancels action you are performing without saving the information.
<b>B</b>	Check-in	Saves and checks in content block you are working on. See Also: "Checked-In Content" on page 418
<b>B</b>	Check-out	Checks out a content block to edit; prevents others from simultaneously working on it. "Checked Out Content" on page 421
8	Collection	Accesses the collection area for a content block; lets you create, edit, and delete collections. See Also: "The screen is refreshed, and the content folder is deleted." on page 46
<b>B</b>	Decline	Declines an approval request submitted to you.
Û	Delete	Deletes selected item. See Also: "Preview" on page 13

Button	Name	Description
Û	Delete Content	Deletes multiple content blocks at once.
ħ	Delete Folder	Deletes current content folder.
<u>B</u>	Do Not Apply XSLT	Removes XSLT applied to XML content viewed in the content history area.
	Edit	Edits content or specific criteria in the workarea. See Also: "Preview" on page 13
M	Edit Metadata	Edits metadata for a content block. See Also: "Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59
<b>*</b>	Edit Summary	Edits summary for a content block. See Also: "Adding a Content Block Summary" on page 53
₽	Insert Library Item	Inserts selected library item into your content block. See Also: "Library Folder" on page 99
٢	Link Check	Identifies any contenty blocks or assets with a hyperlink to the current content block. You would typically use this feature to remove the links before deleting a content block. If you do not remove the links, they will be inoperative after the content block is deleted.
3	Overwrite	Replaces an image or file with a newer version. See Also: "Overwriting Files" on page 112
<u>a</u>	Preview	Previews item that was or will be added. See Also: "Preview" on page 13
60	Publish	Save and publish the content block.

Button	Name	Description
	Remove	Removes items from folders and lists in the Workarea.
₹↓	Reorder	Changes the sequence of links in a collection. See Also: "The screen is refreshed, and the content folder is deleted." on page 46
Ľ	Restore	Restores previously published content block. See Also: "Viewing and Restoring Previous Content Blocks" on page 81
	Save	Saves content that was modified.
<i>6</i> %	Search	Searches content and library folder screens. See Also: "Searching the Library" on page 102; "Searching for Content" on page 171
31	Show Calendar	Displays the calendar in the workarea. See Also: "" on page 124
ð	Submit	Saves and submits content to next approver in the approval chain. See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198
	Update	Changes are saved and content is updated.
Q	View Date	View all calendar events for a selected day. See Also: "" on page 124
R	View Difference	Opens the View Content Difference feature. See Also: "Comparing Versions of a Content Block" on page 84
<b>P</b>	View History	View history of selected content block. See Also: "Viewing and Restoring Previous Content Blocks" on page 81

Button	Name	Description
þ	View Published	Displays currently published version of content block.
<u></u>	View Staged	Displays staged content. See Also: "Staged Content" on page 424

# Working with Folders and Content Blocks

Every content block resides in the Content folder or one of its subfolders. So, to work with an existing content block or create a new one, you must first navigate to its folder.

A typical content folder screen appears below. It consists of three sections:

- The top left frame shows the folder structure. You can click any folder to display its content blocks in the right frame, while its sub-folders appear below it.
- The right frame shows content blocks in the currently selected folder. Above the right frame is a toolbar of buttons that represent tasks you can perform on a selected content block.
- The lower left frame shows Ektron CMS200/300's top level folders

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Microsoft Interr	net	Explorer			_
				Workarea	à	
🗉 – 🗸	View Contents of Folder "	cı	Toolb	ar buttons		
🚞 192.168.0.171/СМЕ	🕒 🕞 🔓 🗣 👘 🗞 🍊	7			J	
🖻 🗁 <u>Content</u>	Title	ID	Status	Date Modified	4	Last Editor
🖻 🛅 <u>Forms</u>	<u>Contact Ektron</u>	15	A	23-Jul-2003 (		
🖲 🚞 <u>Human Resour</u>	Greeting	24				Administrator, Applicati
🖲 🛅 <u>Marketing</u>	Home Page Content	1	A			Administrator, Applicati
🖲 🛅 <u>Products</u>	Introducing the RC Redstar	23	0	04-Dec-2003	10:26 AM	Administrator, Applicati
🛡 🛅 Support	Private Content	2	А			Administrator, Applicati
Bib Syndication	<u>Support Page</u> <u>Trinity In-Line Pipe</u>	8 22	A S	27-Aug-2002 04-Dec-2003		Administrator, Applicati
Solder structure				<u>9</u>		
▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲	Cor	nten	t blocks	in selected fol	der	
🔄 Forms						
🔜 Library						
💴 Modules						
🛃 Administrate						
\$						
é						🥑 Internet

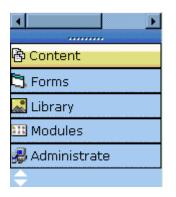
In this chapter, you learn about adding, editing, publishing, and deleting content blocks through the following subtopics. (Permissions and Approvals are discussed in later chapters.)

- "Viewing a Folder" on page 29
- "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31
- "Adding a Content Block" on page 36
- "Editing a Content Block" on page 39
- "Deleting a Content Block" on page 42
- "Adding Sub-Folders" on page 43
- "Deleting Folders" on page 46

## Viewing a Folder

To view any folder under the content folder, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the Workarea as described in "Site Preview" on page 8.
- 2. Click the content folder from the left lower side of the Workarea.



- 3. All content blocks in the content folder appear on the right side of the screen. The content folder's sub-folders appear in the upper left frame.
- 4. To work with any folder or its content blocks, click the folder. When you do, its content blocks appear in the right frame, and its sub-folders appear in the upper left frame.
- **NOTE** You can only view folders for which your system administrator has granted permission.

Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Microsoft Interi	net	Explorer			
Ektron				Workarea	I	
■	View Contents of Folder "	c	Toolb	ar buttons		
🚞 192.168.0.171/СМS	🕒 🕞 🖀 🔜 📅 🗞 🛤 <sup>4</sup>	7			,	
🖻 🗁 <u>Content</u>	Title	ID	Status	Date Modified	l	Last Editor
🖲 🛅 <u>Forms</u>	Contact Ektron	15			-	Administrator, Application
🖲 🛅 <u>Human Resour</u>	Greeting	24				Administrator, Application
🖲 🛅 Marketing	Home Page Content	1				Administrator, Application
Deroducts	Introducing the RC Redstar	23				Administrator, Application
Bigging Support	<u>Private Content</u>	2	Α	03-Mar-2004	03:12 PM	Administrator, Application
■ <u>Syndication</u>	Support Page	8		-		Administrator, Application
	<u>Trinity In-Line Pipe</u>	22	S	04-Dec-2003	11:12 AM	Edit, John
Sector Structure						
Folder structure						
				<u>Q</u>		
	Col	nter	it blocks	in selected fold	ler 🛛	
A Content						
Forms						
😹 Library						
🎫 Modules						
뤋 Administrate						
<del>\$</del>						
Ë						💙 Internet

#### Each folder lists the following information about its content blocks.

Field	Description
Title	The name of the content block.
ID	The number assigned to the content block by Ektron CMS200/300. It is used to retrieve the content block from a database.
Status	The status of the content block. See Also: "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417
Date Modified	The most recent date the content block was added, edited, or published.
Last Editor	The last user who accessed the content block.

Each folder also provides the following toolbar options.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
⊳	Add Content	Opens the editor and creates a new content block in the current folder.	"Adding a Content Block" on page 36
ď	Add Folder	Adds a sub-folder to the current folder.	"Adding Sub-Folders" on page 43
6	Delete Folder	Deletes the current folder. Note: You cannot delete the <b>Content</b> folder.	"Deleting Folders" on page 46
ß	Collections	Adds, edits, or deletes a collection from the content folder.	"Working with Collections" on page 121
	Menus	View and work with menus assigned to this content block	
<i>8</i> 4	Search	Look for content in the folder.	"Searching for Content" on page 171
ď	View Properties	View the folder's properties	

#### **NOTE** Depending on your permissions, you may not see all toolbar buttons.

## Viewing a Content Block

You can view all content blocks that have been created in your Ektron CMS200/300 Web site. Viewing content blocks allows you to view the content, metadata, summaries, and other content block information.

To view a content block in Ektron CMS200/300, follow these steps.

- 1. Navigate to the folder that contains the content block, as explained in "Viewing a Folder" on page 29.
- 2. Click the content block.

rc	<u>Title</u>	<u>ID</u>
08	Contact Ektron	15
88	Home Rage Content	1
	Login Lormation	2
	Support Page	8
10110		

3. The view content screen appears.

🚰 Ektron CMS300 Workarea for E	ditor inChief - Microsoft	Internet Explorer	
cms300		WORKAREA	User: EditorInChi Monday, June 07, 200
🗉 🕂 🗙	View Content "Hon	ne Page Content"	
🗁 <u>Content</u>	🗗 🖻 M 🖻 🕄		
<ul> <li>Human Resources</li> <li>Marketing</li> <li>Products</li> <li>Sports</li> <li>Support</li> <li>Syndication</li> </ul>	Approvals: XML Configuration: Path	Home Page Content 1 Approved (Published) jedit 03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM [None Specified] 03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM 21-Feb-2001 05:46 PM Force All Approvers EditorInChief SportsEditor [None Specified] HTML Content Assumed \	
	Content Searchable	::Yes	
B Content	History Comment:	This is what the user will see when they vi	sit our sample site
Forms Library Modules Settings	Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter Keywords: RC International; RC	rnational ); racing; remote control; airplanes; cars	
	•		<u>ار</u>
Cone Done			🥝 Internet

The view content screen contains information about the content block, including:

Field	Description
Content Title	The title assigned to the content block
Content ID	The ID number assigned to the content block. The ID number is used to retrieve content from a database.
Status	The current status of the content block See Also: "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417
Last User to Edit	The last user to edit this content block
Last Edit Date	When the content block was last edited

Field	Description
Start Date	When the content block will go live on the Web site
End Date	When the content will be removed from the Web site
Date Created	When the content block was created
Approval Method	Whether all approvers must sign off on content block before it is published; managed by your system administrator
Approvals	The users in the approval chain for this content block. See Also: "Approving/ Declining Content Blocks" on page 62
XML Configuration	The XML Configuration applied to the content block. This is typically managed by your system administrator.
Path	The folder path to the content's folder. A slash (\) represents the Content folder.
Content Searchable	<b>Yes</b> appears if the content will be found when someone searches your Web site. <i>See Also</i> : "Searching for Content" on page 171
History Comment	Comment that was added when content block was created or edited
Content	The body of the content block

4. After you enter the content, you have the following options.

**NOTE** Your options may vary according to your permissions and the status of the content block.

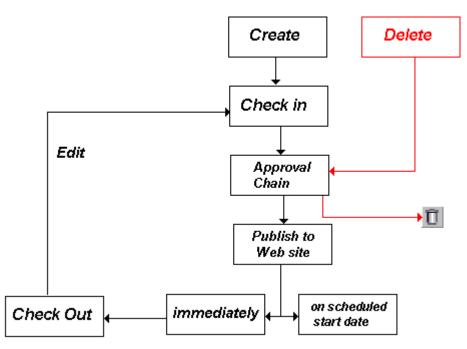
Button	Name	Description	For more information, see
	Edit Content Block	Open content block for editing	"Editing a Content Block" on page 39

Button	Name	Description	For more information, see
	Edit Summary	Click this button to edit the summary for the content block Note: You can only edit the summary if the new content has been saved.	"Adding a Content Block Summary" on page 53
M	Edit Metadata	Edit this content block's metadata <i>See Also:</i> "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198	"Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59
<b>P</b>	View History	View all available older versions of the content block; restore older version	"Viewing and Restoring Previous Content Blocks" on page 81
<u>6</u>	Submit	Submit the content block into the approval chain. This action also returns the changed content to the database and exits the editor.	See Also: "Approving/Declining Content Blocks" on page 62
<b>∂</b> ∎	View Staged	Displays staged content.	"Staged Content" on page 424
<b>1</b>	View Difference	Compares current version with earlier version of content	"Comparing Versions of a Content Block"
Ũ	Delete	Delete content block	"Deleting a Content Block" on page 42
8	Check for content linked to this content	Identify all content blocks with quicklinks to this content block	"Checking for Broken Quicklinks" on page 43
3	Add Task	Attach a task to a content block	"Attaching a Task to a Content Block" on page 183
←	Return	Go back to previous menu	

# Adding a Content Block

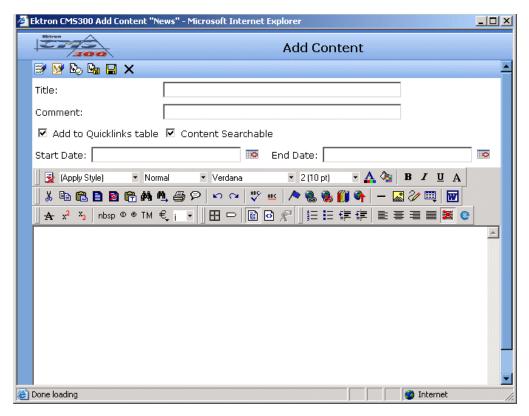
If you have permission to add a content block to a folder, you can create content blocks for that folder. After you create the content block, your system administrator must insert in onto a page on your Web site.

The following flowchart illustrates a typical sequence of events when working with content blocks.



To add a content block, follow these steps.

- 1. Browse to the folder where you want to create the new content block.
- 2. Click the add button (
- 3. The Add Content window opens.



4. Create content in the editor using the following table.

## **Responding to the Fields on the Add Content Screen**

Field	Description
Title	Enter a title for the content block.
Comment	Briefly describe the content, or comment on changes made when editing a content block. The history comment appears on the View Content and Content History screens.

Field	Description
Add to Quicklinks Table	Check if you want to save a Quicklink to this content block. "A quicklink is a special kind of hyperlink that jumps to another content block on your Web site. (A regular hyperlink jumps to a Web page on the internet.)"
Content Searchable	Check this box if the content should be found when someone searches your Web site. See Also: "Searching for Content" on page 171
Start Date	If the content block will not be submitted to the approval chain immediately, enter a date when it will be submitted. See Also: "Scheduling Content to Begin and End" on page 47
End Date	If appropriate, enter a date when the content will no longer be viewable on the Web site. <i>See Also:</i> "Setting an End Date on a Content Block" on page 50
Body Text	Insert content for the content block. For more information about using Ektron CMS200/300's editor, see "Using eWebEditPro" on page 247.

5. After you respond to the above fields and enter the content, the following options are available.

## **Toolbar Options on the Add Content Screen**

Button	Name	Description
	Edit Summary	Click this button to edit the summary for the content block Note: You can only edit the summary if the new content has been saved. See Also: "Adding a Content Block Summary" on page 53

Button	Name	Description
M	Edit Metadata	Edit this content block's metadata.
		Note: All required metadata needs to be added before the content block can be submitted into the approval chain.
		See Also: "Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59; "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198
G	Submit	Submit the content block into the approval chain. This action also returns the changed content to the database and exits the editor.
		See Also: "Approving/Declining Content Blocks" on page 62
Publish		Publish the content to the Web site.
		Note: Only the last approver in the approval chain sees this button.
		See Also: "Approving/Declining Content Blocks" on page 62
		This action also returns the changed content to the database and exits the editor.
<b>⊌</b> }	Check In	Save and check-in the document. This action returns the changed content to the database and exits the editor. It does <i>not</i> submit the content into the approval chain. Rather, it allows you and other users to continue changing it.
	Save	Save the content without leaving the editor. It is a good idea to save your work frequently.
×	Cancel	Close the editor without saving changes.

# **Editing a Content Block**

Ektron CMS200/300 content can be in any of several statuses, as described in "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417. You can only edit a content block for which you have permission and which is in one of the following statuses:

- published
- checked in
- checked out by you

- submitted for your approval
- **NOTE** Once you check out a content block, it cannot be checked out by other users until you check it in.

### **Editing a Content Block**

1. Access the view content screen for the content block you want to edit, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for E	ditor inChief - Microsoft	Internet Explorer	
ektron CMS300		WORKAREA	User: EditorInChief Monday, June 07, 2004
🗉 🕂 🗙	View Content "Hon	ne Page Content"	
🗁 <u>Content</u>	DY 📴 🗹 🔁 🚺	₩ 🖓 ←	
⊖ <u>Fuman_Resources</u> ⊕ Canal Marketing	Content Title:	Home Page Content	
⊕	Content ID:	1	
Produces	Status:	Approved (Published)	
P C Support	Last User To Edit: Last Edit Date:	jedit 03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM	
■	Start Date:	[None Specified]	
	End Date:	03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM	
	Date Created:	21-Feb-2001 05:46 PM	
	Approval Method:		
	Approvals:	🔮 EditorInChief 🔮 SportsEditor	
	XML Configuration:	[None Specified] HTML Content Assumed	
	Path	X	
	Content Searchable	:Yes	
Content	History Comment:	This is what the user will see when they v	isit our sample site
🔁 Forms	Metadata:		
🔜 Library	Title:		
😳 Modules	Welcome to RC Inter Keywords:	rnational	
😼 Settings		; racing; remote control; airplanes; cars	
	•		×
E Done			🔮 Internet 🛛 🖉

- 2. Click the edit button ( $\square$ ).
- 3. The editor opens with the content block inserted.

Ektron CMS Edit Content - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Ektron	Edit Content
📑 📴 🗞 🖫 🔛 🗙	
Title: Home Page Content	
Comment: This is what the user will see when they visit of	bur samplı
Start Date: En	d Date:
📗 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Heading 4 💌 Arial	• • 🛕 🎥 🖪 🖌 🗓 A
↓ 🖹 🖺 🗎 🗃 👘 👬 🐴 👙 🎒 👂 い い 🚏 些	in the second se
A x <sup>2</sup> x <sub>2</sub>   nbsp © © TM € i ▼    田 □   🛅 🖸 ½	▛▏▋⇇⇇∉∉▏≞▕≡≡ <b>≝</b> ₿
RC International is dedicated to the RC racing en three short years RC International has become or vehicles. Our dedication to the sport, and the en	RC International! thusiasts! We eat, work, play, and live RC racing. In the of the leading manufactures of RC racing and flying thusiasts who play it, has endeared our products to the ve our affordable products and hope you will become an
NEW FEATURE:Trinity In-Line Pipe	NEW PRODUCT: Introducing the RC Redstar
Trinitys new pipe and manifold are for rear exhau engines and are now used in both the Sportster and the cheetah. Both the manifold and pipe are made from high-quality aluminum. This new pipe more durable and will withstand a bad crash.	Redstar. This new addition to the RC International fleet brings new options to our customers. With
	×
E Done loading	🌍 Internet 📑

- 4. From the edit content window, you can:
- Edit content
- Save changes
- Check in the content
- Create or edit a summary
- Specify metadata for the content
- Submit the content for approval
- Publish a content block to the Web site
- Access the Library
- Make the necessary edits to the content block. For a description of the fields on the screen, see "Responding to the Fields on the Add Content Screen" on page 37

 Choose a toolbar option from the top of the Edit Content window. These options are described in "Toolbar Options on the Add Content Screen" on page 38.

## **Deleting a Content Block**

**NOTE** The ability to delete a content block is a privilege granted by the system adminstrator. If you do not see a Delete button (1) on the View Content History screen, you do not have permission to do so.

The Delete command lets permanently delete content blocks that are no longer needed on your Web site. Just as in publishing a content block, a content block needs to go through the approval chain before it is removed.

To delete a content block, follow these steps.

- Access the view content screen for the content block you want to delete, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.
- 2. Click the delete button ( $\square$ ).
- 3. The following message appears.

Microsoft	t Internet Explorer 🔀
?	Are you sure you wish to submit this content block to the approvers for deletion? This content will be deleted once the entire list of approvers has approved this request. This action will also delete any library quicklinks associated with the content block.
	Continue?
	Cancel

- 4. Click OK to delete the content block.
- 5. The screen is refreshed, and the updated content table appears.

When the content block goes through the approval chain, it is deleted from **Ektron CMS200/300**. If you are the last approver in the approval chain, the content block is deleted immediately.

See Also:"The Approval Chain on page 196

## **Checking for Broken Quicklinks**

The link checker button () locates all content blocks that include a quicklink to the displayed content block. This feature is useful when deleting a content block, because it informs you of every content block that will include a "dead" link after you delete this content block. You should then edit those content blocks and remove or change the obsolete quicklinks.

To use the link checker, follow these steps.

- Access the View Content page, for the content block whose links you want check, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.
- 2. Click the Check Links button ( 🌉 ).
- 3. A search results page lists each content block that links to the current content block.

Click the title to access the view content page for the selected content block. From there, you can remove or change the quicklink.

## **Adding Sub-Folders**

To further organize content in your Ektron CMS200/300 Web site, you can create sub-folders to store related content blocks.

**NOTE** The ability to delete a content block is a privilege granted by the system

adminstrator. If you do not see a Add Folder button ( -) on the View Contents of Folder screen, you do not have permission to do so.

To add a sub-folder, follow these steps.

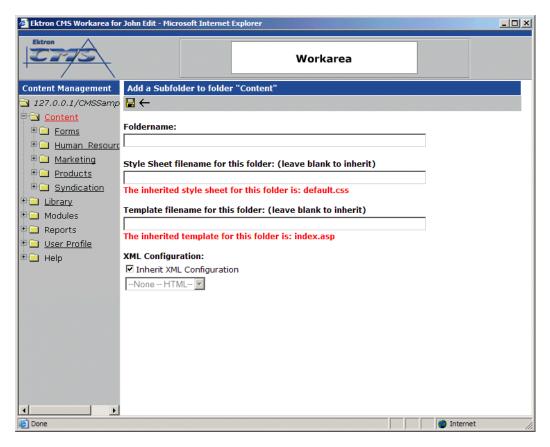
1. Navigate to and click the folder under which you want to create a sub-folder.



2. The contents of the folder appear in the main section of the Workarea.

Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Microsoft	Interne	t Explorer				
Ektron 2000				Workarea	1		
<b>■</b>	View Contents of Fol		Toolb	ar buttons			
🚞 192.168.0.171/СМS	6 🔓 🗳 🤜 🖗	<b>#</b>			/		
Content	Title	I	) Status	Date Modified	1	Last Editor	
🖲 🛅 <u>Forms</u>	Contact Ektron		5 A		_	Administrator,	Application
🖗 🚞 <u>Human Resour</u>	Greeting	-	4 P			Administrator,	
🛡 🚞 Marketing	Home Page Content	-	. A			Administrator,	
⇒ 🛅 Products	Introducing the RC Re	dstar 2	зо			Administrator,	
⊕ 🛅 Support	Private Content	2	2 A	03-Mar-2004	03:12 PM	Administrator,	Application
	Support Page	8	8 A	27-Aug-2002	02:18 PM	Administrator,	Application
⊕ <sup>™</sup> <sup></sup>	Trinity In-Line Pipe	2	2 S	04-Dec-2003	11:12 AM	Edit, John	
<u>Q</u>							
Folder structure							
				Q			
		Conte	ent blocks	in selected fold	ter		
👌 Content							
🕄 Forms							
🔊 Library							
III Modules							
administrate							
Jaco I.							
Ë						🤍 🥶 Interne	et //

- 3. Click the Add Folder button ( $\square$ ).
- 4. The add sub-folder screen appears.



5. Enter the required information in the proper fields. Use the following table to assist you.

Field	Description
Folder name	Enter a name for the sub-folder.
Style Sheet	Specify the style sheet that the content in the folder will use. If left blank, the folder inherits the style sheet from the parent folder.
	Your system administrator should be able to assist you in choosing a style sheet.

Field	Description
Template	Specify a default template the content blocks in which the will be displayed. The default template is used when quicklinks are generated for the content in the content folder. If left blank, the template from the parent folder is inherited.
	Your system administrator should be able to assist you in choosing a template.

- 6. Click the save button ( $\square$ ).
- 7. The screen is refreshed, and a new sub-folder is added to the Web site.

# **Deleting Folders**

You can delete content folders that are no longer needed.

Νοτε	The ability to delete a folder is a privilege granted by the system adminstrator. If					
	you do not see a Delete Folder button (1) on the View Contents of Folder screen, you do not have permission to do so.					
CAUTION!	Deleting a content folder permanently deletes its content blocks, quicklinks and sub-folders.					
	To delete a content folder, follow these steps.					
	1. Navigate to the content folder you wish to delete.					
	2. Click the Delete Folder button ( 1).					
	3. A confirmation message appears.					
	4. If you are sure you want to delete the content folder, click <b>OK</b> .					
	5. The screen is refreshed, and the content folder is deleted.					

# Scheduling Content to Begin and End

Scheduling content lets you control when a content block becomes visible on the Web site. Similarly, you can remove a content block on a predetermined date and time.

When used together, a start date and end date can relieve you of much work. You can automatically determine how long a content block is viewable on your Web site.

# How Does It Work?

When you create a content block, or modify an existing one, you can select a go live date and time. If you do, Ektron CMS200/300 publishes the content block to the live site then. Below is an example.

Your company is having a sale of the century in a month, and everything has been completed for the sale except the announcement. You decide to update your Web site to let the public know about it. With this feature, you can create the Web content now and set it to go live a week before the sale.

## Setting a Start Date

To set a start date:

- 1. Access the editor by adding a new content block or editing an existing one.
- 2. If adding a new content block, enter a title, comment, and the body content.

Ektron CMS Edit Content - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Ektron Edit Content	
🗃 📴 🗞 🖬 🗮 🗙	
Title: Plastic Molder #123	
Comment:	
Start Date: End Date:	
🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 🔹 Verdana 🔹 2 (10 pt) 🔹 🛕 🍇 🖪 🖌 🖳 A	
X 🗈 🖻 🖻 🛱 🐴 🐴 🎒 🖓 🗠 ལ 🖤 🚥 ٨ 🍓 🎆 🎁 - 🔜 🖉 🏢 👿	
A x <sup>2</sup> x <sub>2</sub> nbsp ◎ ● TM € ; ▼ ] 田 □   國 ④ 🛠 ] 띂 臣 镡 镡   圭 吾 君 〓 🌉 🤤	
Job Title	Plastics Molder
Job Number	123
Description	
RC International, a leading supplier of consumer level radio controlled vehicles, is lookin experienced plastics molder to join our team. The candidate will join our highly skilled t enthusiastic molders to bring to life our next generation products. RC International is e extremely rapid growth and offers many opportunities for advancement.	eam of
The successful candidate must posses the following attributes:	
Done loading	Internet
Concluding	Turcemer .::

3. Click the calendar button next to the start date field.

Comment: Ischeduling content sample



4. The Ektron CMS200/300 calendar pops up.

5. Select the date and time when the content will become visible on the Web site.

ē)	🖹 Ektron CMS Calendar: Jan2003 - Microsoft I 💶 🔲 🗙									
	Dec		Jan 2003							
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat			
				1	2	<u>3</u>	4			
	<u>5</u>	<u>6</u>	Z	<u>8</u>	<u>9</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>11</u>			
	<u>12</u>	<u>13</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>15</u>	<u>16</u>	<u>17</u>	<u>18</u>			
	<u>19</u>	<u>20</u>	<u>21</u>	22	<u>23</u>	<u>24</u>	<u>25</u>			
	<u>26</u>	27	<u>28</u>	<u>29</u>	<u>30</u>	<u>31</u>				
	11 • : 09 • : 15 • AM •									
Submit Cancel										
e	Done				🧿 Intern	et		1		

- 6. Click the Submit button.
- Notice that the date and time are inserted into the start date field



You can enter the date and time into the text field without using the calendar. If you do, use the following format

#### DD-MMM-YYYY hh:mm:ss tt

**NOTE** When you select a time for content to go live, that time depends on the server's system clock. If the server's system clock is incorrect, the content will not go live at the intended time.

### What Happens After I Set a Start Date?

After you set a go live date and the content completes the approval chain, two scenarios may occur:

The content block is new

The content block already exists

Each scenario is now explained.

#### Setting the Go Live Date on New Content

When you set a go live date on a new content block, the content becomes viewable on the specified date and time. If you view the page that contains the content before then, you only see the template. This occurs within Ektron CMS200/300 and when you view the content on the Web site.

#### Setting the Go Live Date on Existing Content

When you set a go live date on an existing content block, and it completes the approval chain, the content has a grey border within Ektron CMS200/300 until the date specified.

When you view the content block on the Web site, you see the previously published version. When the go live date occurs, the new content replaces the previously published version, and the content block's status changes to Active.

## Setting an End Date on a Content Block

To set an end date for a content block, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the editor by adding a new content block or editing an existing one.
- 2. If adding a new content block, enter a title, comment, and the body content.
- 3. Click the calendar button next to the **End Date** field.

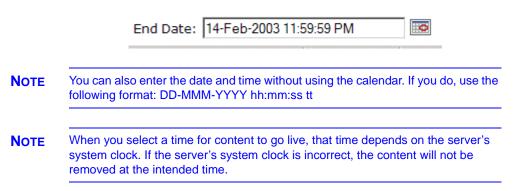
		$\sim$
End Date:		
<ul> <li>7 (36 pt)</li> </ul>	- A 🚈 🖪 Z II A .	2 X

4. A calendar pops up.

5. Select the date and time you want the content to be removed from the Web site.

1	Ektron CMS Calendar: Jan2003 - Microsoft I 💶 🔲 🗙							
I	Dec Jan 2003 Feb					I		
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	
				1	2	<u>3</u>	4	
	<u>5</u>	<u>6</u>	Z	<u>8</u>	<u>9</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>11</u>	
	<u>12</u>	<u>13</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>15</u>	<u>16</u>	<u>17</u>	<u>18</u>	
	<u>19</u>	<u>20</u>	<u>21</u>	22	<u>23</u>	<u>24</u>	<u>25</u>	
	<u>26</u>	<u>27</u>	<u>28</u>	<u>29</u>	<u>30</u>	<u>31</u>		
	11 ▼ : 09 ▼ : 15 ▼ AM ▼ Submit Cancel							
ħ	Done							

- 6. Click the Submit button.
- 7. Notice that the date and time are inserted into the **End Date** field



## What Happens After I Set an End Date?

If you set an end date to a content block, and it gets published to your Web site, the content is visible on the Web site. When the end date and time occur, the content is hidden on the Web site. At this point, If a site visitor goes to the page containing the content, he sees the template without the content block. Because of this, Ektron recommends having another content block ready to replace the content block with the end date.

# Adding a Content Block Summary

A summary provides a short description of a content block to supplement the title when displaying a list of content blocks on a Web page. When you create or edit a content block, you can create a summary.

A good example of using a summary is a news Web site. A page on that site could list the top stories followed by a quick summary of each (illustrated below).

#### **TOP STORIES**

Ektron Named a Rising Star (08-15-2001)

August 15, 2001, Amherst, New Hampshire, USA — Ektron, Inc., an innovator in Web content management and authoring, has been named a Rising Star as part of the prestigious New England Technology Fast 50 Program.

Ektron Launches International Distribution Program (08-08-2001) August 8, 2001, Amherst, New Hampshire, USA — Ektron, Inc, an innovator in dynamic Web content authoring and management with over 350,000 users, today announced the launch of its international distribution program.

The title of a summary is the title of the content block, and links to the page with the full article. Below the title is a brief description that grabs the reader's attention.

Like content blocks, summaries can include images and files as well as different font styles and sizes. This chapter explains how to create summaries and how they can help navigation within your site. Your system administrator determines how to display the summaries on your site.

# **Creating Summaries**

There are two ways to create summaries:

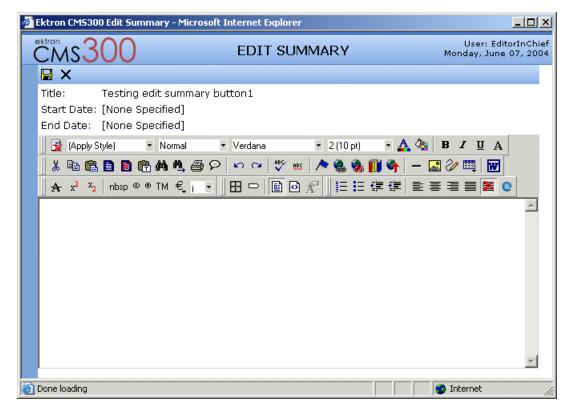
- for a new content block (see "Creating a Summary on a New Content Block" on page 54)
- for an existing content (see "Creating a Summary for an Existing Content Block" on page 56)

## **Creating a Summary on a New Content Block**

- 1. Navigate through the content folders until you find a folder in which you want to create the content.
- 2. Click the Add Content button. The Add Content screen appears.

Ektron CM5300 Add Content "News" - Microsoft Internet Explorer				
Add Content				
🗃 😼 🗞 🖬 🖶 🗙				
Title:				
Comment:				
☑ Add to Quicklinks table ☑ Content Searchable				
Start Date: End Date:	0			
🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 💌 Verdana 💌 2 (10 pt) 💌 🛕 🍫 🗄	BIUA			
≵ 🖻 🖺 🖻 🛱 ቶ角 ≜ 🖉 🗠 ♀   ♥ 🚥   柊 🍓 🚯 🚺 🌳   - 🔜	2/ 💷 👿			
」A x² ½   nbsp ◎ ◎ TM € ; ▼ ┃田 中   圓 函 叙   ] 註 註 律 律   重 喜	∃ ≣ 🗮 🤮			
	<u> </u>			
Done loading	🎯 Internet 💋			

- Insert a title, comment, and body text. See Also: "Adding a Content Block" on page 36
- 4. Click the Save button ( $\square$ ).
- 5. Click the Edit Summary button (<sup>III</sup>) to open the Edit Summary window.



- 6. Enter a summary for the content block you are creating. The summary can be as long as you want, and can include your favorite features like images, files, and hyperlinks.
- 7. Click the Save button ( $\blacksquare$ ).
- 8. The Add Content window reappears, where you can finish adding your content.

Below is a sample of a summary page on a Web site.

Login Information (1/29/2002 3:23:50 PM)

<u>How to create summaries</u> (2/12/2002 11:58:05 AM) This contains information about creating summaries for your content.

Home Page Content (1/29/2002 3:44:48 PM)

Contact Us (1/29/2002 3:10:35 PM)

## **Creating a Summary for an Existing Content Block**

In this example, we create a summary for the home page content block.

1. From the Workarea, Click the **Content** folder.

•	<b>&gt;</b>
ð	Content
5	Forms
°٤́	Library
111	Modules
Þ	Administrate
¢	

- 2. Navigate to the content block to which you want to add a summary.
- 3. From the View Contents of Folder screen, click the content block.

#### 4. The following screen appears:

Ektron CM5300 Workarea for E	ditor inChief - Microsoft	Internet Explorer	
CMs300		WORKAREA	User: EditorInCh Monday, June 07, 20
🗉 🕂 🛪	View Content "Hon	ne Page Content"	
Content	🕑 🖻 М 🔁 🚺	▶ 🖧 ←	
Human Resources Marketing Products Sports Support Syndication	Content Title: Content ID: Status: Last User To Edit: Last Edit Date: Start Date: End Date: Date Created: Approval Method: Approvals: XML Configuration: Path Content Searchable	Home Page Content 1 Approved (Published) jedit 03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM [None Specified] 03-Jun-2004 12:05 PM 21-Feb-2001 05:46 PM Force All Approvers EditorInChief SportsEditor [None Specified] HTML Content Assumed \	
	Content Searchable	es	
Content	History Comment:	This is what the user will see when they	visit our sample site
<ul> <li>Forms</li> <li>Library</li> <li>Modules</li> <li>Settings</li> </ul>	Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter Keywords: RC International; RC	mational ; racing; remote control; airplanes; cars	
	•		•
Cone			🥘 Internet

- 5. Click the Edit Summary button (2).
- 6. The Edit Summary page appears.
- Insert the text of the summary. You can include images, files, hyperlinks, and quicklinks through the Library. See Also: "Library Folder" on page 99
- 8. Click the Save button ( $\square$ ).
- 9. The view content page reappears. The status of the content block changed to "checked out" to you.

**NOTE** When you enter or edit an existing content block's summary, its status changes to checked out. After you create the summary, click the Check-In button to check the content block in. From that point, you need to submit or publish it.

# Adding or Editing Metadata

# What is Metadata?

After you create or update a content block, it is typically published to the World Wide Web (WWW). Since the Web has millions of pages, Metadata makes it easier for people to find your content.

Programs that search the Web (such as Google) look at the page's title and metadata keywords to determine if it should return your Web page on its list of results.

To improve search program results, **Ektron CMS200/300** provides two fields within the Metadata feature.

• Metadata Title - appears on the search results screen to further define your Web page (illustrated below - the content title is purple; the metadata title is black)

#### Welcome to Ektron.com - Web Content Management Solutions and Web ...

Web Content Management - HTML/XML editor from Ektron, Inc. ... Solutions that simplify Web content management for any organization. ... www.ektron.com/ - 24k - 23 May 2004 - <u>Cached</u> - <u>Similar pages</u>

• Metadata Keywords - are searched by leading search programs, along with the page's title

## **Editing Metadata**

**NOTE** You can only edit the metadata of content blocks that are published, checked in, or checked out by you. Also, all required metadata must be added before the content block can be submitted into the approval chain.

To edit a content block's metadata, follow these steps.

- Access the view content screen for the content block whose metadata you want to edit, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.
- 2. Click the Edit Metadata button ( $^{\boxed{M}}$ ).
- 3. The edit metadata screen opens with the current metadata displayed.
- **NOTE** Your screen may differ from the example below. Your system administrator determines the appearance of the Edit Metadata screen.

🕙 Ektron CMS300 Edit Metadata - Micro	soft Internet Explorer	
Ektron	Edit Metadata	
🖫 🗙		
Content Title: Home Page Content * = Required fields		
Title: (500 max.)		Separator Character ";"
Welcome to RC International		X
Keywords: (500 max.) Car Plane Boat All >> All << All << Plane Boat All <     RC International RC racing remote control airplanes cars		Separator Character ";"
E Done		🥥 Internet 💦

- 4. Edit the metadata. Note that
- Required fields are marked with an asterisk (\*). Someone must place at least one response in these fields before the content block can be approved.
- Your system administrator may prevent you from editing a fields. In this case, the field has a gray background and you cannot place the cursor there.

• Fields may appear in two columns, as illustrated in the **Keywords** field on the above screen. In this case, the system administrator is providing a list of terms that you can apply to the content block. You can only enter terms from the list -- you cannot enter free text as you can with the other fields.

One column is labeled **Not Included** and the other **Included**. Move individual terms between lists by clicking the arrow (>> and <<). Or, move all terms from one list to the next by clicking the **All** >> arrow.

- 5. Click the save button ( $\blacksquare$ ).
- 6. The view content screen reappears.

# Approving/Declining Content Blocks

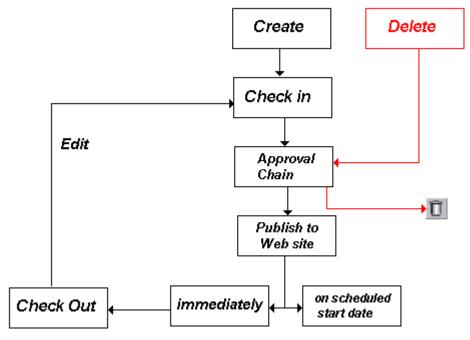
Your site administrator establishes an *approval chain* for each folder, or even specific content blocks. The approval chain is a list of people or user groups who must approve a new or edited content block before it is published to the Web site. If a user group is part of an approval chain, any member of the group can approve the content block to move it to the next approver.

The administrator also determines the sequence of approvers in the approval chain.

When a new or edited content block is submitted to the approval chain, it is reviewed by users who may

- change it
- approve or decline it
- publish it to the Internet (it is published when the last user approves it)

The flowchart below illustrates the steps in the approval process.



You can approve and decline all content blocks that have been submitted to you from the approval folder. The steps shown below guide you through the approval or decline of these content blocks.

# Approve/Decline One Content Block

1. Click the Smart Desktop button (circled in red below).



2. Click Reports.

#### 3. Click Approvals.

View All Content Awaiting Appro	val	
G	REFERENCES CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR	
Select All <u>Clear All</u> <u>Title Request T</u>	Ype Start Date Submitted b	<u>v</u> Path
Contact Ektron Publish	[None Specified] Administrato	r, Application \
Support Page Publish	[None Specified] Administrato	r, Application \
🗌 Plastic Molder #123 Publish	[None Specified] Administrato	r, Application <u>\Human_Re</u>
<ol> <li>Click the title of decline.</li> </ol>	the content block you war	nt to approve or
	EKtron	Dei
Support	<u>t Page</u>	Put
Produce	") <u>3 Page</u>	Put
RC Inte	rnational Announces the R	<u>C Cheetah</u> Del
	ntont	Duk

#### 5. The View Content Awaiting Approval Screen appears.

Ektron CM5300 Workarea for A	opplication Administrator - N	1icrosoft Interne	t Explorer		J	<u>- 0 ×</u>
CMs300		WORKARE	A		User Monday, June O	: admin 7, 2004
🗉 🕂 🗙	View All Content Awai	ting Approval				
🗁 <u>Smart Desktop</u>	6					
🖶 🧰 <u>Tasks</u>	Select All Clear All					
🗄 🛅 Reports	<u>Title</u>	Request Type	e <u>Start Date</u>	Submitted by	Path	
	🗖 <u>Trinity In-Line Pipe</u>	Publish	[None Specified]	Edit, John	7	
Content						
🕄 Forms						
🔜 Library						
🖽 Modules						
뤚 Settings						
é					) Internet	1.

This screen displays the following information about the content block.

Field	This is the
Content Title	Title given to content block.
Content ID	ID number assigned to content block by Ektron CMS200/300.
Status	Current status of content block. See Also: "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417
Submitted By	User who submitted content block.
Last Date Edited	Date and time content was last edited.
Start Date	Date and time content will go live on Web site.
End Date	Date and time content will be removed from the Web site.
Date Created	Date and time content block was originally created.
Approvals	Current approval chain for content block.
History Comment	History comment that has been assigned to content block.
Metadata	Metadata assigned to content block. "Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59
Summary	Summary created for content block.
Content	Body of content that has been submitted.

A toolbar at the top of the screen lists tasks you can perform on the content.

Button	Name	Result of Clicking
<u>B</u> 2	Publish	Accept changes to the content block and publish it to the site. Note: If there is another approver in the approval chain for the content, this is replaced by a <b>SUBMIT</b> button.

Button	Name	Result of Clicking
<b>B</b> ,	Decline	Reject changes and keep current version of content block live on the Web site.
	Edit	Check out content block and change it if desired.
<u>æ</u> 271	View Published/ Staged	Toggle between the currently published version of content block and submitted version. This can help you compare differences between versions. See Also: "Displays staged content." on page 26
÷	Back	Return to previous screen.

# **Approve Multiple Content Blocks**

The approvals table allows you to select some or all of the submitted content blocks, and submit them all together.

### **Selecting Multiple Submitted Content Blocks**

To select multiple submitted content blocks:

1. Begin by accessing the checked in report table.

View All Content Awaiting Approval				
ß				
Select All Clear All				
Title	<u>Request</u> Type	<u>Start Date</u>	Submitted by	Path
Contact Ektron	Delete	[None Specified]	Publish, Jane	7
Support Page	Publish	25-Feb-2003 10:00:00 AM	Publish, Jane	7
Products Page	Publish	[None Specified]	Edit, John	\Products
<u>RC International Announces the RC Cheetah</u>	Delete	[None Specified]	Edit, John	\Marketing\News
New Content	Publish	30-Oct-2002 10:56:36 AM	Johnson, Mike	Marketing
RC International Ships RC Sportster	Delete	[None Specified]	Johnson, Mike	\Marketing\News
RC Cheetah	Delete	15-Dec-2002 11:56:36 AM	Publish, Jane	\Products\RC Cars
RC Redstar	Delete	[None Specified]	Publish, Jane	\Products\RC Planes
Support Center	Publish	[None Specified]	Publish, Jane	7

2. Check off the check boxes of the content blocks you want to approve.

To select all the displayed submitted content blocks, click the "Select All" link at the top of the table.

<u>Select All</u> <u>Clear All</u>	
( <sup>m</sup> ) <u>Title</u>	<u>Rec</u> Typ
Contact Ektron	Del
Support Page	Puł
Products Page	Puł
RC International Announces the RC Cheetah	Del
New Content	Puł
RC International Ships RC Sportster	Del
RC Cheetah	Del
RC Redstar	Del
Support Center	Puł

3. If needed, remove the check mark from the check boxes of the content blocks you do not wish to approve.

To clear all the selections, click the "Clear All" link at the top of the table.

Title     Reg Typ       Contact Ektron     Dele       Support Page     Pub
Support Page     Pub
Products Page Pub
RC International Announces the RC Cheetah Dele
New Content         Pub
RC International Ships RC Sportster         Dele
RC Cheetah     Deletah
RC Redstar     Deleter
Support CenterPub

#### **Approving Several Content Blocks**

To approve several submitted content blocks:

- 1. Select the submitted content blocks you want to approve as described in "Selecting Multiple Submitted Content Blocks" on page 66.
- 2. Once selected, click on the approve all button in the toolbar at the top of the screen.



The following message will be displayed.

Microsoft	t Internet Explorer
?	This action will approve all the selected content changes awaiting your approval. This may cause some content blocks to become published or deleted.
	Do you wish to continue?
	Cancel

- 3. To continue with the approval, click the OK button.
- 4. Once completed, the approved content blocks will either be submitted to the next publisher, published immediately to the Web site, or deleted, depending on the approval chain set for each of the content blocks.

### Example of an Approval Chain

The approval chain begins when a content contributor submits a new or edited content block. If e-mail is enabled, an e-mail is sent to the next approver in the approval chain.

The following example follows a typical content block from creation to publication. Three users make up this approval chain

- Sports Writer creates sports content
- Sports Editor edits and publishes all sports articles
- Editor In Chief edits and publishes all articles

Each user has different permissions corresponding to their roles.

#### **Creating a Content Block**

The first step is to create a content block. To create a new content block:

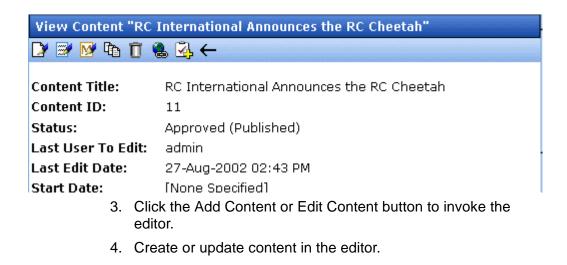
- 1. Log in to Ektron CMS200/300 as a SportsWriter.
- 2. Navigate through the content folders in the Workarea until you find a content folder you have permissions for. If you have permission to add a content block, the Add Content Block

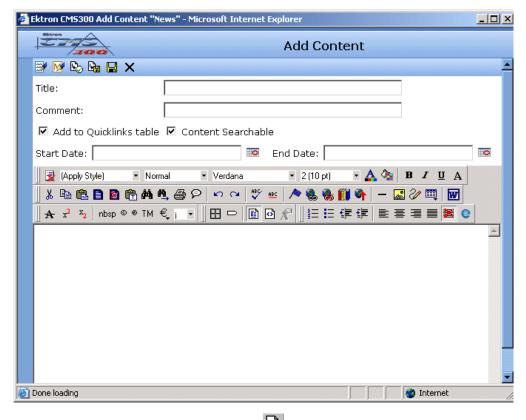
button () appears on the View Contents of Folder screen (illustrated below).

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for J	ohn Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
CMS300	WORKAREA	User: jedit Thursday, June 03, 2004
🗉 🕂 🛪	View Contents of Folder "Marketing"	
😂 <u>Content</u>	<mark>] 🔁 🐂</mark> 📴 🛤 😭	
🖗 🛅 <u>Human Resources</u>	TIClick here to add a new content block to this folder	Last Editor
🖹 🗁 <u>Marketing</u>		Last Editor
🖮 🛅 <u>News</u>		
Products		
🖲 🛅 Support		
🖲 🛅 Syndication		
B Content		
🖏 Forms		
🔝 Library		
🛄 Modules		
₿ Settings		
🕘 http://192.168.0.171/cms300samp	e/cms300scripts/content.asp?action=ViewCont	🖉 Internet 🏼 🎢

If you have permission to edit a content block, the Edit Content

Block button () appears on the View Contents of Folder screen (illustrated below).





- 5. Click the submit button  $(\Box)$  at the top of the window.
- 6. The content block is now in the approval chain. The first user in the approval chain receives an email saying the content block is ready for approval.

🚔 Request for content approval	
<u>File Edit View Tools Message Help</u>	- All and a second s
	Image: weight of the second
From:         Webmaster@yourcompany.com           Date:         Friday, May 03, 2002 4:16 PM           To:         SportsEditor@yourdomain.com           Subject:         Request for content approval	
The content "Red Sox Win World Series!" approval by "Sports Writer".	has been submitted for your
To locate the content, the folder path in you	r workarea is: \Sports.
The following link will take you to the subm site: <u>http://192.168.0.156/CMS200Sample</u>	
Please Note: You must login and select the changes.	preview icon to view the
The content was submitted for approval on	03-May-2002 4:16:19 PM.
Approvals: [SportsEditor]-EditorInChief	
Comment:	
	-
	li.

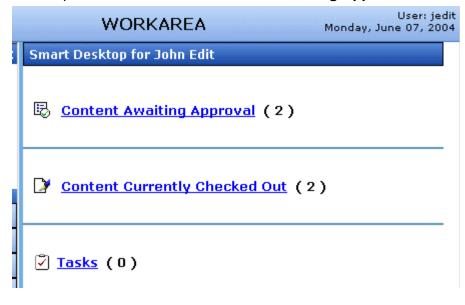
#### **NOTE** Emails are only sent if your Administrator enables them.

The content contributor, Sports Writer, has completed his role in the approval chain but continues to receive emails notifying him of changes in the status of the content block.

#### **First Approver**

After the Sports Writer submits the content block, the first user in the approval chain, Sports Editor, receives an email stating that a content block needs his approval. The first approver for this content block is Sports Editor. He can change and approve the content block or decline it.

Sports Editor logs into Ektron CMS200/300, navigates to his desktop, where he sees a link **Content Awaiting Approval**.



He clicks the link and sees all content blocks awaiting his approval.

The approvals folder window displays information such as title, who submitted it, go live date, etc. The Sports editor clicks the submitted content block.

View Content "Red	Sox win World Series"
🗄 🕵 🍓 💁 ee 🗧	
Content Title:	Red Sox win World Series
Content ID:	32
Status:	Submitted for Approval(s)
Last User To Edit:	SportsWriter
Last Edit Date:	07-Jun-2004 10:37 AM
Start Date:	[None Specified]
End Date:	[None Specified]
Date Created:	07-Jun-2004 10:37 AM
Approval Method:	Force All Approvers
Approvals:	😴 EditorInChief 😴 SportsEditor
XML Configuration:	[None Specified] HTML Content Assumed(inherited)
Path	\Sports
Content Searchable	:Yes
History Comment:	
Metadata:	
<b>T</b> !4	The View Content Awaiting Approvals window appears. It displa

The View Content Awaiting Approvals window appears. It displays all the information necessary to decide whether to approve or decline the content block, including:

Field	Description	
Content Title	Title of the content block.	
Content ID	ID number assigned to the content block by Ektron CMS200/300.	
Status	Current status of the content block. See Also: "Appendix A: Content Statuses" on page 417	
Last User to Edit	Name of user who last edited content block	
Last Edit Date	When the content block was last edited.	

Field	Description
Start Date	When the content block goes live on Web site, if specified by user when creating or editing content.
End date	When the content block becomes inactive on Web site, if specified by user when creating or editing content
Date Created	When the content block was originally created.
Approval Method	Set up by system administrator to determine approval chain.
Approvals	The approval chain for the content block. The current approver for the content block appears in red.
History Comment	A comment given to the content block by the editor.
Content	The body of the content block, which appears on the screen.

At the approval window, the Sports Editor has several options.

Button	Description
Approve	Sends content to next approver in approval chain.
Decline	<ol> <li>Sends email to creator, notifying him/her that content was declined.</li> <li>Removes content from approval chain.</li> </ol>
Edit	Invokes the editor. The approver can make changes to content block.

For demonstration purposes, we'll choose **Approve**.

#### **Second Approver**

After the content block is approved, the next approver in the approval chain receives an email saying that the content block is ready for approval.

🚔 Request	for content approval					_O×
<u> </u>	<u>V</u> iew <u>T</u> ools <u>M</u> essag	e <u>H</u> elp				<u></u>
<u>©</u> ⊋ Reply	Reply All Forward	Print Delete	A Previous	🐳 Next	Addresses	
From: Date: To: Subject:	Webmaster@yourcompany Friday, May 03, 2002 4:19 EditorInChief@yourdomain Request for content appro	) PM h.com				
	ent "Red Sox Win Wo by "Sports Writer".	orld Series!" has b	een submitt	ed for yo	ur	<u>_</u>
To locate	the content, the folde	r path in your wo	rkarea is: \S	ports.		
	The following link will take you to the submitted content block on the Web site: <u>http://192.168.0.156/CMS200Sample/index.asp?id=17</u> .					
Please N changes.	ote: You must login ar	nd select the prev	iew icon to	view the		
The cont	ent was submitted for	approval on: 03-1	May-2002 -	4:16:19 P	M.	
Approvals: SportsEditor-[EditorInChief]						
Commer	t.					
						<b>.</b>

At this point, the following events have taken place.

- 1. Content was created and submitted by SportsWriter
- 2. An email was sent to SportsEditor notifying him of the content awaiting his approval
- 3. The content block was reviewed and approved by SportsEditor
- 4. An email was sent to EditorInChief notifying him of the content awaiting his approval
- 5. The content was submitted to EditorInChief for final approval and publication.

EditorInChief logs in to Ektron CMS200/300 and accesses his workarea. The workarea has an Approval folder with the content that is awaiting his approval.

EditorInChief navigates through the Approval folder until he finds the content block **Red Sox win World Series**.

View All Content Awaiting Approval				
6				
<u>Select All</u> <u>Clear All</u>				
<u>Title</u>	Request Type	<u>Start Date</u>	<u>Submitted by</u>	Path
Red Sox win World Series	<u>s</u> Publish	[None Specified]	Writer, Sports	<u>\Sports</u>

From this window, EditorInChief can view information about the content block, including title, go live date, user who created it, etc. Click the content that you want to approve.

View Content Awaiting Approval					
🗟 🗟 🏹 💩 🗲					
Content Title:	Red Sox win World Series				
Content ID:	32				
Status:	Submitted for Approval(s)				
Submitted by:	Sports Writer				
Last Edit Date:	07-Jun-2004 10:37 AM				
Start Date:	[None Specified]				
End Date:	[None Specified]				
Date Created:	07-Jun-2004 10:37 AM				
Approvals:	😴 EditorInChief 😴 SportsEditor				
History Commen	it:				
Metadata:					
Title:					
Keywords:					
Summa <del>ry</del> :					
Content:					
	This window is similar to the providus approver's but inclu				

This window is similar to the previous approver's but includes a Publish button at the top of the screen. The EditorInChief has a publish button (instead of a submit button) because he is the last approver in the approval chain. When he approves the content block, it is published to the Web site.

Just like the previous user, the last user has the following options:

Button	Description
Approve	Sends the content to the next approver in the approval chain.
Decline	<ol> <li>Sends an email to the creator, notifying him/her that the content was declined.</li> <li>Removes the content from the approval chain.</li> </ol>

Button	Description
Edit	Invokes the editor. The approver can make changes to the content block.

After reviewing the content, the EditorInChief decides that the content is great, and publishes the content block to the Web site. When the content block is published and becomes live on the Web site, the approval chain of the content is complete.

The user who created the content block receives an email notifying him that it was published.

🚔 Content	changes have been	made					
Eile Edi	t <u>V</u> iew <u>T</u> ools <u>M</u> es	isage <u>H</u> elp					<u></u>
24	Q. 42	9	X	*	*		
Reply	Reply All Forward	Print	Delete	Previous	Next	Addresses	
From: Date: To: Subject:	Webmaster@yourcom Friday, May 03, 2002 SportsWriter@yourcom Content changes have	4:22 PM npany.com					
The changes to the content "Red Sox Win World Series!" have been approved. The content changes went live immediately.							

#### Review

Let's review what happened during the life cycle of the content block.

- 1. The user, SportsWriter, created and submitted a new content block.
- 2. The first approver, SportsEditor, received an email informing him a content block was awaiting his approval.
- 3. SportsEditor reviewed and approved the content block.

- 4. The final approver, EditorInChief, received an email informing him of a content block awaiting his approval.
- 5. EditorInChief reviewed and published the content block to the Web site.
- 6. SportsWriter receives an email that the content block was published on the Web site.

# Viewing and Restoring Previous Content Blocks

Past revisions of published content blocks are available, unless your system administrator has purged the old versions. Your ability to view a content block's history is determined by your user privileges.

**NOTE** This section explains how to view and possibly restore older versions of a content block. To see a change-by-change comparison of two content blocks, use the View Content Difference feature, explained in "Comparing Versions of a Content Block" on page 84.

To view and restore a historical version of a content block, follow these steps.

- 1. Navigate to the content block whose history you wish to view.
- 2. Select the view history button (1).
- 3. The content history window appears.

ublished Date	View Content H	listary "Private Content"			
25-May-2004 02:51 PM	Content Title:	Private Content			
03-Mar-2004 05:12 FM	Content ID:	2			
02-Mar-2004 02:12 PM 02-Mar-2004 02:09 PM	Last User To Edi	It: admin			
13-Mar-2004 03:09 FM	Lest Edit Date:	03-Mar-2004 03:12 PM			
A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACT OF	Start Date:	[None Specified]			
	End Date:	[Nane Specified]			
	Date Created:	21-Feb-2001 06:29 PM			
	History Comment: only users and member / member can see this content:				
	Hertadetai				
	Title:				
	CMS300 Login Information				
	Keywords: login; cms300; information				
	Bob test:				
	This is default text				
	termany)				
	Gashast:				

This window has two sides:

- The left side, the *Document History* area, displays all published versions of the content block. Each version is indicated by the date when it was published.
- The right side has information about the selected content block.
- 4. Click a date from the list.



5. Information about the content block appears on the right.

Ektron CMS Content History - Microsoft Internet Explorer				
Ektron		Content History		
	View Content	History "Home Page Content"	<u>^</u>	
Published Date	r 🖓 💼			
01-Dec-2003 11:15 AM	_ <b></b> ,			
01-Dec-2003 11:15 AM	Content Title:	Home Page Content		
01-Dec-2003 11:12 AM	Content ID:	1		
01-Dec-2003 11:12 AM		-		
	Content Status			
26-New-2002 02:15 DM		dit: 💆 Application Administrator		
26-Nov-2003 02:15 PM	Last Edit Date:	01-Dec-2003 11:12 AM		
26-Nov-2003 02:14 PM	Start Date:	[None Specified]		
	End Date:	[None Specified]		
	Date Created:	21-Feb-2001 05:46 PM		
- 04 New 0000 00.44 DM	Published Date			
26-Nov-2003 02:13 PM				
20 HOV 2003 02.13 PM	-	ent:This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site		
	Approver List	🛃 admin		
	Metadata:			
	Title:			
	Welcome to RC	International	_	
	Keywords:	International		
	-	al; RC; racing; remote control; airplanes; cars		
	Summary:			
	Welcome to RC	International.		
	Content:			
	content:	Welcome to RC International!		
		PERSONAL REPORT OF STREET, AND STRE	<u> · 🎽</u>	
E		🌍 Internet	.:	

6. To restore a content version, click the restore button ( $\textcircled{\mathbb{P}}$ ).

**NOTE** The ability to restore a content block is a privilege granted by the system administrator. If you do not see a Restore button ( P) on the View Content History screen, you do not have permission to do so.

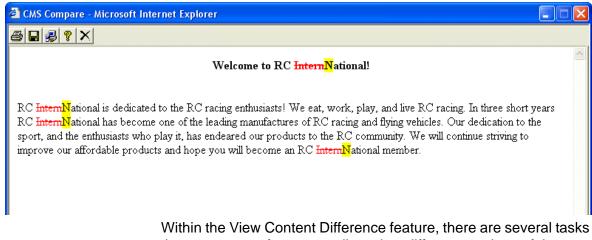
7. The historical version is placed in the approval chain. Upon approval, the historical version is published to the Web site.

# Comparing Versions of a Content Block

# Introduction

The View Content Difference feature highlights changes that were made to a selected content block.

Below is an example of the View Content Difference screen, showing both versions of a content block. The changes are indicated by redlining the deleted content and highlighting the added content in yellow.



Within the View Content Difference feature, there are several tasks that you can perform, as well as view different versions of the content separately, or compared.

## When Can I Compare Content?

The View Content Difference feature is only available when

 you are viewing a historical version of a content block (See Also: "Preview" on page 13) • a staged version of the content is available (*See Also:* "Staged Content" on page 424.)

The following table explains when you can use the feature, and which versions are compared.

Content Block Status	Compares current published version with
Published	Historical version stored in the content history area
Checked-In	Most recently checked-in version
Submitted	Submitted version
Pending Start Date	Scheduled version pending start date
Checked Out	Not available

Content that is in a state where it can be compared with another version is denoted by the **View Difference** button (
) in the content history area or on the Web page view.

# The Compare Content Window

Νοτε

The first time the View Content Difference feature is opened, a simple installation program will be run. See "First Use of the View Content Difference Feature" on page 90for additional information.

As you can see, the Compare Content window is comprised of the following:

- Toolbar
- Content window

#### View content tabs



Each area is explained in the following sections.

#### Toolbar

The content comparison toolbar contains five buttons, explained below.

Button	Name	Description
<b>B</b>	Print	Sends content to local or network printer. Note: This option prints the content currently displayed, whether it is the compared content, published content, or staged content.

Button	Name	Description
network. Whe		Saves a copy in HTML format on your local machine or network. When saved as a physical file, the HTML may be edited. However, the changes are not saved to the Web Server.
		The save option saves the version of the content you are viewing.
2	Setup	Opens setup dialog box to configure the settings. Typically, only an administrator would use this. For more information, see "Setup" on page 87.
ę	Help	Displays additional information about using the compare feature.
×	Exit	Closes the window.

#### Setup

Click the **Setup** command () to open the setup dialog box. Typically, only a system administrator would edit these settings.



You may configure the setup options to better suit your needs. The following table explains each option.

Option	Description		
Compare Options			
Compare Visual Aspect	Compares content as it would appear on a Web page.		
Compare Source Code	Displays compared content as source HTML.		
Whitespace Options			
Ignore All	All whitespace characters are ignored.		
Smart Detect	One or more consecutive whitespace characters are treated as a single separation sequence. That is multiple whitespace characters are ignored.		
Detect All	Blank (whitespace) characters are treated as any other character.		
Other Options			
Ignore Case	Determines whether case sensitive or insensitive comparison is made.		
Ignore Format Attributes	Specifies wether the control should ignore changes in text-formatting attributes (HTML Visual Analysis only).		

When you have completed updating your setup information, click **OK** to save any changes.

#### **Content Area**

The content area is the section that displays the content comparison.



#### Welcome to RC InternNational!

RC InternNational is dedicated to the RC racing enthusiasts! We eat, work, play, and live RC racing. In three : RC InternNational has become one of the leading manufactures of RC racing and flying vehicles. Our dedicatio sport, and the enthusiasts who play it, has endeared our products to the RC community. We will continue strivi improve our affordable products and hope you will become an RC InternNational member.

The following table describes the change indicators.

Symbol	Example	Content state
Plain Black Text	Trinitys new pipe and	Unchanged
Yellow Highlighted Text	Our dedication to the	Added
Red, Struck-through text	<del>dedicated to the RC</del>	Deleted

#### **View Tabs**

When viewing content in the View Content Difference feature, there are three view modes, explained below.

View	Description
Diff	Compares published version of content to staged version
Published	Displays currently published version

View	Description
Staged	Displays the staged version of content. See Also: "Staged Content" on page 424

To switch between views, click the respective tab.

# First Use of the View Content Difference Feature

The first time the View Content Difference screen is used on a client machine, a simple installation program is performed.

Click **YES** when the following screen appears.



When the installation program completes, close and reopen the View Content Difference feature.

# **Content Workflow Reports**

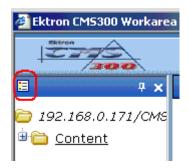
The reports folder contains several reports to help you manage the workflow of content blocks through **Ektron CMS200/300**. In most cases, you choose a report that corresponds to a content block status, then view all content blocks in that status. If appropriate, you can perform tasks on selected content blocks. For example, you can check in checked out content blocks.

This chapter explains how to access the reports folder and how to use the reports.

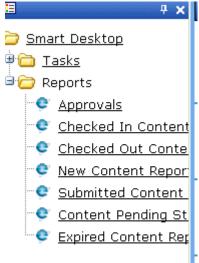
# Accessing the Reports Folder

To access the Reports folder, follow these steps.

- 1. Log in to your Ektron CMS200/300 Web site and access the Workarea.
- By default, the Smart Desktop folder appears in the top left frame. If it does not appear, click the Smart Desktop button to display it.



3. From the top left side of the Workarea, click the **Reports** folder.



#### Νοτε

The Approvals and Checked Out Reports are also available from the Workarea.

4. The reports are described below.

Report	Displays content blocks in this status	For more information, see
Approvals	Requiring your approval.	"Approvals Reports" on page 95
Checked In Content	Checked in	"Checked In Report" on page 96
Checked Out Content	Checked out	"Checked Out Report" on page 97
New Content	New (that is, created and saved but never published)	"New Content Report" on page 97
Submitted Content	Submitted	"Submitted Report" on page 97
Pending Content	Approved and pending a start date	"Pending Start Date" on page 98
Expired Content	Expired date has been reached	"Expired Content" on page 98

#### Information on the Report

Each report displays the following information about content blocks in the selected status.

Field	Description	
Title	Title of content block.	
ID	Internal number assigned to content block by <b>Ektron CMS200/300</b> .	
Date Modified	If a Start Date was assigned to the content block, it appears here.	
Last Editor	The user who last edited the content block.	
Path	Folder location of content block.	

#### **Sorting Options**

Upon viewing a report, you can sort its content blocks by any column. To do so, click the column heading.

You can also restrict the display to content blocks in a specified folder. To do so, click a folder in the **path** column. When you do, the report limits its display to content blocks in that folder.

#### **Viewing/Editing Content Blocks on the Report**

To view (and possibly edit) any content block on a report, click it. It appears on the View Content screen (illustrated below).

Content Title:	Home Page Content			
Content ID:	1			
Status:	Checked Out			
Last User To Edit:	admin			
Last Edit Date:	04-Dec-2003 10:20 AM			
Start Date:	[None Specified]			
End Date:	[None Specified]			
Date Created:	21-Feb-2001 05:46 PM			
Approval Method:	Force All Approvers			
Approvals:	🔮 jedit			
XML Configuration:	[None Specified] HTML Content Assumed			
Path				
Path				
Path Content Searchable	\ :Yes			
Content Searchable	\ :Yes This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site			
Content Searchable				
Content Searchable History Comment: Metadata: Title:	This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site			
Content Searchable History Comment: Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter	This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site			
Content Searchable History Comment: Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter Keywords:	This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site mational			
Content Searchable History Comment: Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter Keywords: RC International; RC	This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site			
Content Searchable History Comment: Metadata: Title: Welcome to RC Inter Keywords:	This is what the user will see when they visit our sample site mational ;; racing; remote control; airplanes; cars			

#### **Selecting Content Blocks**

Some reports have toolbar options that let you perform tasks on the displayed content blocks. On these screens, you can select content blocks by checking the box next to a content block. Then, click a toolbar option to perform the selected task.

To select all displayed content blocks, click Select All.

Content Reports: Checked In Content Re	poi	t
▶ ←		11.0.0
<u>Select All</u> <u>Clear All</u>		
<u>Title</u>	ID	L
Private Content	2	E
RC International Hosts RC Conference	10	E

To deselect all content blocks, click Clear All.

# **Approvals Reports**

This report lists every content block awaiting your approval. By acting as a central repository for these content blocks, you don't need to search through folders to find them.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91. The Approvals Report features two extra columns:

**Request Type** - indicates the type of action to be performed when you approve the content block, either **Publish** or **Delete**.

Submitted By - The user who placed the request for action.

Below is an example of the View All Content Awaiting Approval screen.

B				
<u>Select All</u> <u>Clear All</u> <u>Title</u>	Request Type	<u>Start Date</u>	Submitted by	Path
Contact Ektron	Publish	[None Specifie	ed] Administrator, Appli	cation \
Support Page	Publish	[None Specifie	ed] Administrator, Appli	cation \
Plastic Molder #1:	23 Publish	[None Specifie	ed] Administrator, Appli	cation <u>\Human</u>

From here, you can approve content blocks. To do so, select the content blocks then click the Approve All Selected Requests

toolbar button (100).

If you want to decline a content block, click it from the **Title** column. It appears on the View Content Awaiting Approval screen, whose

toolbar has a Decline (
button.

### **Checked In Report**

The Checked In Content report displays all the content blocks currently in a checked in status.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91.

After selecting content blocks, use the submit toolbar option (C) to submit them for approval or publication, depending on your position in the approval chain. See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198

# **Checked Out Report**

The checked out content report displays all content blocks currently in a checked out status.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91.

After selecting content blocks, check them in using the Checkin toolbar option (

# **New Content Report**

The new content report displays all the content blocks that have been created and saved but never published.

To learn how to access, sort, view, and select content blocks listed on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91.

## **Submitted Report**

The submitted content report allows you to view all content blocks in a submitted status.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91.

#### **Viewing Position in Approval Chain**

While viewing the submitted content report, you can view a content block's position is its approval chain. Below is an example of the view content screen. The next approver in the approval chain is denoted by red text on the **Approvals** line.

	View Content "Trinity In-Line Pipe"(Staged Version)				
	📝 🖻 🏽 🖓 🔶				
	Content Title:	Trinity In-Line Pipe			
	Content ID:	22			
	Status:	Submitted for Approval(s)			
	Last User To Edit: jedit				
	Last Edit Date:	04-Dec-2003 11:14 AM			
	Start Date: [None Specified]				
End Date: [None Specified]		[None Specified]			
Date Created: 04-Dec-2003 10:24 AM		04-Dec-2003 10:24 AM			
Approval Method: Do Not Force All Approvers		Do Not Force All Approvers			
	Approvals:	🛃 admin			

### Pending Start Date

The Pending Start Date report allows you to view all content blocks that have been approved, but whose start dates haven't yet occurred.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91. The Pending Start Date Report features an extra column: **Start Date**, which indicates when the content block is scheduled to go live.

### **Expired Content**

The Expired Content Report displays all content blocks that are currently expired.

To learn how to access, sort, view, edit and select content blocks on this report, see "Accessing the Reports Folder" on page 91. The Expired Content Report features an extra column: **End Date**, which indicates when the content block is scheduled to become inactive.

# **Library Folder**

The library folder stores images, files, quicklinks and hyperlinks that can be inserted into editor content. Before you can insert them into content, you must copy them from your computer to a larger, file server computer that everyone editing your site can access.

This chapter explains how to copy such files and insert them into Web content.

### Terms Used in this Chapter

- An *image* is any graphic file, which can include illustrations and photos. Common image file extensions are .gif., .jpg, .tiff, etc.
- A *file* is type of computer file that can be launched from a browser, such as Internet Explorer. Examples include a Microsoft Word document and a .PDF file.
- A *hyperlink* is a commonly used or hard to remember Web address (also known as a URL). After you add hyperlinks to the library, users can easily apply them to editor content.

So for example, if the editor content is "Contact Ektron," the user can select the text, click the library button, select **hyperlinks** to find the Ektron hyperlink, and apply that hyperlink to the text.

Library Folder: "Content\hyperlinks"				
₾ 🗟 ←				
hyperlinks <u>Title</u>	<u>ID</u>	Date modified		
Ektron, Inc.	<u>23</u>	05-Sep-2002 05:46 PM		

Once the page is published, a person reading it can click the text to "jump" to the web address www.ektron.com.

• A *quicklink* is a special kind of hyperlink that jumps to another content block on your Web site. (A regular hyperlink jumps to a Web page on the internet.)

Whenever a content block is created, a quicklink is created for it.

### Accessing The Library

1. To access the library, click the Workarea button ( $^{\textcircled{}}$ ) or icon.



2. Click the Library folder in the lower left corner of the Workarea.



3. The Library folder appears.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	×
Sktron 200	Workarea	
Image: 192.168.0.171/CMS         Image: 192.168.0.171/CMS         Image: 1000000000000000000000000000000000000	Library Folder: "Content"	
Content Content Forms Library Modules Administrate Done Done	Internet 201	

 A list of the sub-folders appears. Also, a properties button on the toolbar lets you view any folder's properties. (*See Also:* "Library Folder Properties" on page 101)

And a search button lets you look for library items. (*See Also:* "Searching the Library" on page 102)

#### **Library Folder Properties**

To view a library folder's properties, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the Properties button (1).
- 2. The library management screen appears. From here, you can view all options for a folder.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for Bob Bolt - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 🗙			
Skiron 2000		Workarea	
🗉 🕂 🛪	Library Management		
🚞 192.168.0.171/CMS	÷		
⊡́ <u>Cibrary</u> ⊕ <u>© Forms</u>	Image Extensions: gif,jpeg,jpg,bmp,png		
⊕ 🛅 <u>Human_Resour</u> ⊕ 🛅 <u>Marketing</u>	File Extensions: ppt,pdf,xls,doc		
🕫 🚞 <u>Products</u>			
🖲 🛅 Support			
🖲 🚞 Syndication			
🚯 Content			
🕄 Forms			
🔜 Library			
💴 Modules			
ቇ Administrate ←			
🙆 Done			🥑 Internet 🛛 🖉

3. The library properties screen displays the following settings.

Field	Description	
Image Extensions	File extensions of images that can be copied to this library folder. For example, .gif and .jpg.	
Image Upload Path	Server location to which images are copied.	
File Extensions	Extensions of files that can be copied to this library folder. For example, .doc and .pdf.	
File Upload Path	Server location to which files are copied.	

Your system administrator controls these settings.

### Searching the Library

You can search the library for items to insert into the content. The search helps find an item when you only know some information

about it. For example, you know that an image's name includes **Ektron** but don't know the exact name or its folder.

To search the library, click the binoculars button from the library workarea (illustrated below).

Library Folder:	"0
₩ ←	
<u>Title</u>	
🗀 <u>calendars</u>	

When you do, a search screen appears with several fields that let you narrow your search. The fields are described below.

**NOTE** Some search field check boxes are circles while others are squares. If the box is a circle, you can only choose one option. If it is a square, you can select as many as you wish. Only library assets that satisfy *all* search criteria appear on the Search found screen.

Field	Description	
Keywords	Specify keywords that the search will use. A keyword can be a complete or partial name. The search looks for the keywords in the file's internal name (for example, airplane.gif) or title The title is assigned by the user when the image is inserted into the library.	
All Types	The search will include all library asset types.	
Images only	The search only includes images.	
Quicklinks Only	The search only includes quicklinks.	
Files Only	The search only includes files.	
Hyperlinks Only	The search only includes hyperlinks.	

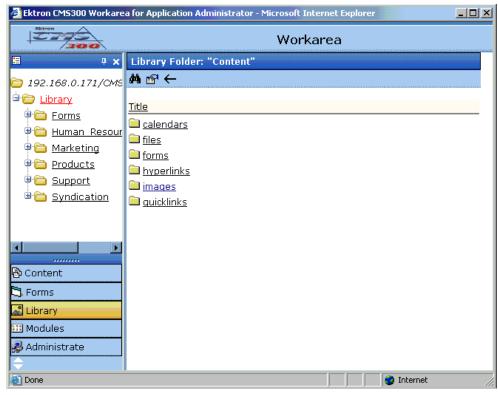
Field	Description
Filename Search	If you check this box, the search considers only the file name, <i>not</i> the title assigned by the user when the item is inserted into the library.
Only search items last edited by myself	The search only considers library assets that were last modified by you.

## Files

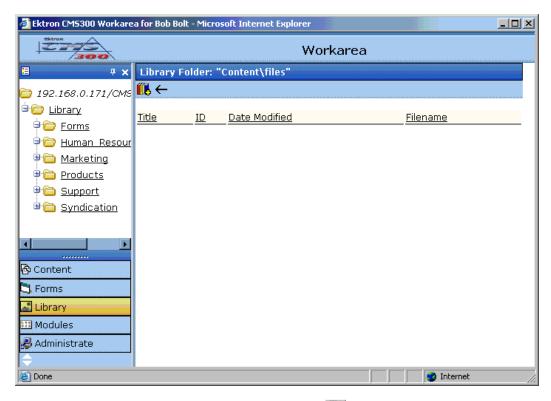
For a definition of the term "files," see "Terms Used in this Chapter" on page 99.

Files must be copied to the Ektron CMS200/300 library before users can insert them into content. To copy a file to the library, follow these steps.

- 1. In the Workarea, browse the library folder and select a subfolder to which you want to copy a file.
- **NOTE** When you copy a file to a folder, only users with permissions to that folder can insert the file into their content blocks.



- 2. Several sub-folders appear in the right frame. Click the files folder.
- 3. The main screen of the files folder appears with a table of copied files.



- 4. Click the Add Library button ( III.).
- 5. The Add File screen appears.

🖆 Ektron CMS300 Workarea for Bob Bolt - Microsoft Internet Explorer		
	Workarea	
🗉 🕂 🛪	Add Library Item to Folder: "Content\files"	
C 192.168.0.171/CMS		
🖹 🧰 Library	Title Filename	
Forms		Province
🗎 🗎 🗁 <u>Human Resour</u>		Browse
🖲 🧰 <u>Marketing</u>		
eroducts		
e <u>Support</u>		
🖲 🚞 Syndication		
<b>Ⅰ</b> ►		
Content		
S Forms		
🔊 Library		
💴 Modules		
🛃 Administrate		
ど Done	📄 📄 🚺 💓 Internet	li.

6. Enter the necessary information according to the following table.

Field	Description	
Title	Enter a title for the File to be copied	
Filename	Enter the filename (location) of the file to be copied.	

Shown below is a description of the buttons on the screen.

Button	Name	Description
Browse	Browse	Browse through the computer or network for the file.

Button	Name	Description
<u>L</u>	Preview	View the file on your PC to make sure it's the correct one before you upload it.
		Note: You need the file's application installed to preview it.
	Save	Add the file to the application.
←	Back	Return to the previous screen.

After you enter the necessary information and click the Save button, the file is copied. Now, users with permissions to that folder can insert the file into their content.

#### **Viewing Files**

Once a file is copied to the library, you may preview it. To preview a copied file, follow these steps.

- 1. Navigate to the library folder to which the file was copied.
- 2. A table of files copied to that folder appears.

🖉 Ektron CMS300 Workare	a for Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer
	Workarea
🗉 🕂 🛪	Library Folder: "Content\files"
눧 192.168.0.171/C	<b>Ĩ</b> ₩ ←
	Title ID Date Modified Filename
Human Resc	Punctuation rules 35 19-May-2004 11:18 AM /CMS300Sample/uploadedFiles/Punctuation Introd
Pica Marketing     Products	
🚯 Content	
🕄 Forms	
🔊 Library	
III Modules	
🛃 Administrate	
🙋 Done	Internet

- 3. Click the file you want to preview.
- 4. The view file screen appears.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for Application Adn	ninistrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Skiron Sie Co	Workarea		
🗉 🕈 🕹	111 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1 Y 1	m in Folder: "Content\files"	19110019110019110
🗀 192.168.0.171/C	🖸 🕑 🐍 🗊 🔶		terreterreterrete
⊡́ <u>)</u> <u>Library</u> ⊕́ <u>)</u> <u>Forms</u>	Title:	Punctuation rules	
🛡 🛅 Human Resc	Filename:	/CMS300Sample/uploadedFiles/Punctuation Introducing Lists.doc	
🛛 🖻 🛅 <u>Marketing</u>	Library ID:	35	
Products	Parent Folder:	Content	
	Last User To Edit: Application Administrator		
	Last Edit Date:	19-May-2004 11:18 AM	
🔁 Content	Date Created:	19-May-2004 11:18 AM	
🕄 Forms	Preview Punctuat	ion rules	
🔜 Library			
🛄 Modules			
🛃 Administrate			
🙆 Done		🕐 Internet	1.

Field	Description
Title	Title assigned by user who copied or edited it.
Filename	Filename and location on the server.
Library ID	ID number assigned by Ektron CMS200/300 when file was originally copied.
Parent Folder	File's parent folder. Users need permissions to this folder to insert the file into content.
Last User to Edit	Last user who changed file.
Last Edit Date	When file was last edited.
Date Created	When file was originally copied to library.

- 5. To view the file, click the **Preview** link at the bottom of the screen.
- 6. The application used to open the selected file type launches and displays the file.

- **NOTE** You may need to download some files before you can be view them (for example, .mdb, .mp3, .zip, etc.).
  - 7. To close the preview window, click the close button in the top right corner of the window.

#### **Editing a File's Title**

You can edit the title of a file that has been copied to the library. To edit a file, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the view file screen, as described in "Viewing Files" on page 108.
- 2. Click the Edit button ( $\square$ ).
- 3. The edit file screen appears.

Ektron CMS300 Workarea for Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer		
Skiron Zaras		Workarea
🗉 🕂 🛪	Edit Library Item in F	older: "Content\files"
🗁 192.168.0.171/C	₩ ←	
🖹 🗁 Library	Title	ID Filename
♥ 🗀 <u>Forms</u> ♥ 🛅 <u>Human Resc</u>	Punctuation rules	35 /CMS300Sample/uploadedFiles/Punctuation Introducing Lists.doc
🖲 🛅 <u>Marketing</u>		
Products		
🔁 Content		
S Forms		
Library		
🛃 Administrate		
	•	
🕘 Done		📄 📄 👘 Internet

- 4. Change the title of the file.
- 5. Click the Update button ( $\blacksquare$ ) to save the changes.

#### **Overwriting Files**

If a library file becomes out of date, or if the wrong version was copied, you may replace it with a new version. Overwriting files allows you to minimize disk space and the number of library files.

**NOTE** The ability to overwrite a library file is a privilege granted by the system administrator. If you do not see an Overwrite button (2) on the View Library Item in Folder screen, you do not have permission to overwrite.

To overwrite a file, follow these steps

- 1. Navigate to the view file screen for the file you want to overwrite, as described in "Viewing Files" on page 108.
- 2. Click the Overwrite button ( $\square$ )
- 3. The overwrite file screen appears.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workare	ea for Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Extrem Composition Compositio	Workarea	
🗉 🕂 🛪	Overwrite Library Item in Folder: "Content\files"	
☐ 192.168.0.171/C▲ ☐ ☐ ☐ Library	□     □       Title     Filename	
Image: Forms	Punctuation rules /CMS300Sample/uploadedFiles/Punctuation Introducing Lists.do Browse Please select a replacement file.	c
Content	Current library item: Preview Punctuation rules	
Library III Modules Ø Administrate		
E Done	🖉 Internet	/i.

- 4. Click the Browse button (Browse...)
- 5. A window opens that lets you locate the new file.
- 6. Click the file, then click the **Open** button.

7. You return to the overwrite file screen with the path to the new file in the text field.

Filename		
/CMS300Sample/uploadedFiles/Punctuatior	n Introducing	g Lis <sup>.</sup>
C:\Tech Pubs dept\Conventions\Terminolog	Browse	

Please select a replacement file.

8. To preview the file before you copy it, click the Preview button

(LA). The file is previewed in a separate window. Click the X button in the top right corner of the screen to close it and return to the workarea.

9. If you are sure that you want to overwrite the current version of

the file with this version, click the update button  $(\square)$ .

10. The following message appears.

Microsoft	t Internet Explorer	×
2	WARNING: You are about to overwrite a library file!	
~	The filename of the local file will be changed to match the existing filename. This will ensure that we links to this library item do not break.	eb
	Continue?	
	OK Cancel	

11. To overwrite the file, click **OK**.

#### Adding a File to Your Content

After a file is copied to the library, users can add it to a content block. To add a file to a content block, follow these steps.

1. Invoke the editor by adding or editing a content block in Ektron CMS200/300.

<u>@</u> ]	Ektron CMS300 Add Content "Ne	ews" - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
	Skron Store	Add Content	
	🥶 😼 🗞 🖬 🖬 🗙		<u> </u>
	Title:		
	Comment:		
	🗹 Add to Quicklinks table	🗹 Content Searchable	
	Start Date:	🐱 End Date:	0
	📗 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Norm	nal 🔹 Verdana 🔹 2 (10 pt) 🔹 🛕 🌆 🖌 🖳 🗛	
		L 🖨 P   🗠 ལ   🆤 😐   🏞 🐍 🇞 🚺 🖣   — 🔛 🌽 🖽   👿	
	<mark>] A</mark> x <sup>2</sup> x <sub>2</sub>   nbsp © ® TM €	🔍 💽 🗉 🕞 🔝 🖉 🛛 🔚 🗄 🗄 🕼 🕼 😫 🖉 🤮	
			<b>A</b>
			-
e	Done loading	📄 📄 👘 Internet	1.

- 2. Click the library button ( $\blacksquare$ ).
- 3. The library opens.
- 4. Navigate to the folder that contains the file you want to insert.

🚰 Ektron CMS300 Library For Application Administrat	or - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
🗁 192.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/	Library Folder: "Content"	
🖻 🧰 Library	<i>#</i> 4 ←	
P C Forms	<u>Title</u>	<u>Items</u>
<sup>₽</sup> <sup>™</sup> Human Resources	🗀 <u>calendars</u>	0
<sup>⊕</sup> <u>Marketing</u> <sup>→</sup> <sup></sup>	🗀 <u>files</u>	1
Products	<u>forms</u>	0
<sup>⊕</sup> <u>Support</u>	<u>hyperlinks</u>	1
<sup>™</sup> <sup>™</sup> <u>Syndication</u>	images	2
	auicklinks	7
To upload and insert a local file:		
<b>116</b> 77 B.		
Description:		
Filename:		
Browse		

5. Click a files folder on the right side of the library to display the files copied to that folder.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Library For Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🔲 🗙		
192.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/ 102.168.0.171/CMS300Sample/	Library Folder: "Content\files"	
Human Resources         Marketing         Products         Dim Support         Jim Syndication	files <u>Title ID Date modified</u> Punctuation rules 35 19-May-2004 11:18 AM	
To upload and insert a local file:		
Description: Filename: Browse		

Νοτε	If the file you want to insert has not been copied, you may copy it by using the lower left section of the screen.		
	6. Click the file that you want to insert into the content block.		
Νοτε	You may preview the file by clicking the preview button.		
	<ol> <li>Click the insert button (<sup>1</sup>) to insert the file.</li> <li>A hyperlink to the file appears in your content.</li> </ol>		
о. A пур	8. A hyperlink to the file appears in your content. $A x^2 x_2   nbsp \otimes TM$		
	Punctuation rules		
	You can click the link to open the file.		

### Hyperlinks

For a definition of the term "hyperlinks," see "Terms Used in this Chapter" on page 99.

#### **Adding Hyperlinks**

To add a hyperlink to editor content, follow the procedure described in "Files" on page 104. The only difference is that you add a hyperlink instead of a file.

#### **Viewing Hyperlinks**

To view a hyperlink, follow the procedure described in "Viewing Files" on page 108. The only difference is that you view a hyperlink instead of a file.

#### **Editing Hyperlinks**

To edit a hyperlink, follow the procedure described in "Editing a File's Title" on page 111. The only difference is that you edit a hyperlink title instead of a file title. You can also edit the URL.

#### **Adding Hyperlinks to Your Content**

Once a hyperlink is added to the library, users can add the hyperlink to their content blocks.

To add a hyperlink to a content block, follow the procedure described in "Adding a File to Your Content" on page 113. The only difference is that you add a hyperlink instead of a file.

### Images

For a definition of the term "images," see "Terms Used in this Chapter" on page 99.

#### **Uploading Images**

You must copy images to the library before content creators can insert them into content blocks. To copy an image to the library, follow the procedure described in "Files" on page 104. The only difference is that you add an image instead of a file.

#### **Viewing Images**

To view an image, follow the procedure described in "Viewing Files" on page 108. The only difference is that you view an image instead of a file.

#### **Editing Image Titles**

To edit an image's title, follow the procedure described in "Editing a File's Title" on page 111. The only difference is that you edit an image's title instead of a file title.

#### **Overwriting Images**

When an image in the library becomes out of date, or if the wrong version of an image was copied, you may overwrite that image with a new or correct version. Overwriting images minimizes disk space and the number of copied library images.

**NOTE** Overwriting images is an advanced permission that you may or may not have.

To overwrite an image, follow the procedure described in "Overwriting Files" on page 112. The only difference is that you overwrite an image instead of a file.

**NOTE** You can only overwrite an image with another image of the same extension. (that is, .gif > .gif, not .jpg > .gif)

#### **Adding Images to Your Content**

Once an image is added to the library, users can add it to a content block.

To add an image to a content block, follow the procedure described in "Adding a File to Your Content" on page 113. The only difference is that you add an image instead of a file.

The image is placed into the picture properties dialog box, where you can change it before inserting it. For information about the picture properties dialog box, see "The Picture Properties Dialog Box" on page 271.

### Quicklinks

For a definition of the term "quicklinks," see "Terms Used in this Chapter" on page 99.

#### Adding a Quicklink to Content

After a new content block is created, users can insert a quicklink to it into any other content block. To do so, follow the procedure described in "Adding a File to Your Content" on page 113. The only difference is that you add a quicklink instead of a file.

Be sure to place the cursor where you want the quicklink to appear before inserting it. When the quicklink is inserted, the title of the "jumped to" content block appears in the content. You can double click the link to test it.

When the page is published, a reader can click the link to jump to the quicklink page.

#### **Viewing Quicklinks**

To view a quicklink, follow the procedure described in "Viewing Files" on page 108. The only difference is that you view a quicklink instead of a file.

The table below describes each field on the quicklinks display.

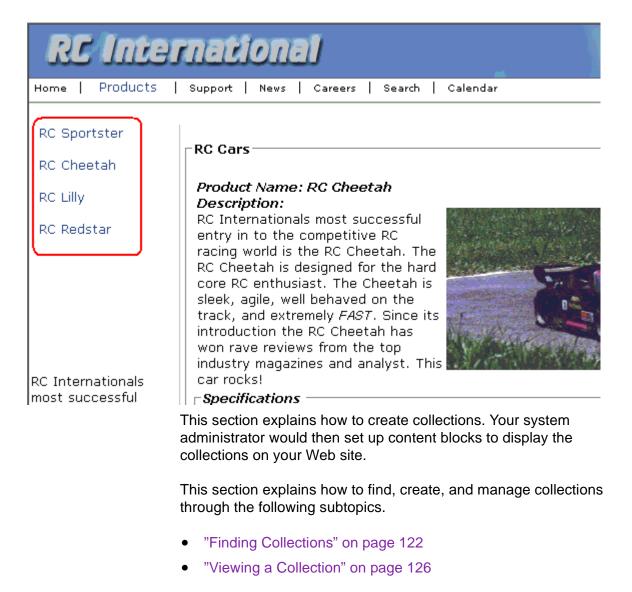
Field	Description
Title	Title given to the hyperlink by the user who added it, or last edited it.
URL Link	URL link for the quicklink.
Library ID	ID number assigned automatically by Ektron CMS200/300 when the quicklink was originally added.
Parent Folder	Parent folder that the quicklink belongs to. Users need permissions to this folder to be able to access the quicklink.
Last User to Edit	Last user that made changes to the quicklink.

Field	Description
Last Edit Date	The date the quicklink was last edited.
Date Created	The date and time the quicklink was originally added to the Ektron CMS200/ 300 library.

To preview a quicklink, click the link at the bottom of the view quicklink page.

# **Working with Collections**

A collection provides a list of content blocks that can be placed on a Web page to offer readers a list of links to relevant content blocks. In the following illustration, the circled content is an example of how a collection appears on a Web page.



- "Creating a Collection" on page 128
- "Editing Content Blocks in a Collection" on page 136
- "Reordering Collections List" on page 137
- "Editing Collection Information" on page 138
- "Deleting a Collection" on page 139

### **Finding Collections**

Every collection is assigned to a folder. If you want to find the collections assigned to any folder, navigate to it and click the

Collection button (). For more information, see "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122.

Since collections can be assigned to several content folders, the Modules folder provides a central Collections folder, which displays all collections on one screen, regardless of their content folder. You can perform all collection tasks from the Collections folder *except* creating a new collection. To create a new collection, you must first access its content folder. For more information, see "Finding a Collection Using the Collections Folder" on page 124.

#### Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder

To access collections for a content folder, follow these steps.

1. Click the content folder that contains the collection.



- 2. The content blocks in the folder appear in the right frame.
- 3. Click the Collections button (b).
- 4. The View Collections screen appears.

Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Micros	oft I	internet Explorer	<u>-</u> O×
Skiron Salar			Workarea	
🗏 🕂 🛪 🗙	View Collections i	n Fa	older: "Support"	
혇 192.168.0.171/CMS	<b>⊹</b> ←			
Content Content Forms Human Resour Marketing Contents Products Content Content Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Marketing Content Content Marketing Content Content Marketing Content Con	<u>Title</u> Support Packages	and the second second	Date Modified 27-Oct-2003 06:55 PM	<u>URL Link</u> /CMS300Sample/support.asp
Content Content Forms Library Modules Administrate				
Done				🔹 🚺 🕐 Internet

The screen displays each collection created for the folder. The following table explains each column.

Column	Description
Title	The title assigned to the collection by the creator.
ID	The ID assigned to the collection by Ektron CMS200/ 300. This number is used to store and retrieve the data to/from the database.
Date Modified	When the collection was last edited.
URL	The default template used to display the content.

To learn more about a collection and perform tasks on it, proceed to "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.

#### Finding a Collection Using the Collections Folder

To access the Collections screen that displays *all* collections in *all* content folders, follow these steps.

1. From the top-level folders in the lower left frame of your Workarea, click **Modules**.



2. Click the **Collections** folder.

Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Micro	osoft	Internet Explorer	
Extron Company			Workarea	
🗉 🕂 🛪	Collections Repo	rt		
혇 192.168.0.171/СМS				
Collections	Title	ID	Description	Path
☐ Collections ☐ Collections ☐ Calendars	<u>Products</u>	1	Products navigation	\Products
⊕ <u>Eorms</u>	<u>Main Jobs listing</u>	2	This is an example of using the collection object for creating teasers in a page.	\Human_Resources
⊕ 🛅 MemberShips ⊕ 🛅 Smart Desktop	<u>Support</u> <u>Packages</u>	3		\Support
Content				
💐 Forms				
🔜 Library				
III Modules				
🛃 Administrate				
Done				🎯 Internet 🥼

#### 3. The Collection Report screen appears.

The screen has four columns. The following table describes each column.

Column Title	Description
Title	Title given to collection by user who created, or last edited, it.
ID	ID number assigned by Ektron CMS200/300. (Developers use this number to reference the collection in ecmCollection custom function.)
Description	Description given to collection by user who created, or last edited, it.
Path	Folder location of the collection.

To learn more about the collection and perform tasks on it, proceed to "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.

### Viewing a Collection

To view a collection, follow these steps.

- Select a collection using the procedure described in "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122 or "Finding a Collection Using the Collections Folder" on page 124
- 2. Click the collection.
- 3. The view collection screen appears.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer			
Stron 	Worka	rea		
🗉 🕂 🗙	View Collection "Products"			
<ul> <li>192.168.0.171/CMS</li> <li>Modules</li> <li>Collections</li> <li>Calendars</li> <li>Forms</li> <li>Surveys</li> </ul>	P ≥↓ ▷ □ ←     Title     RC Sportster     RC Cheetah     RC Lilly     RC Redstar			
MemberShips <u>Smart Desktop</u>	<u>More info</u>			
Content Conten				
🙋 Done			🥑 Internet	1.

The screen displays the name of each collection in your **Ektron CMS200/300** system. To learn more about any collection, click **More Info**. When you do, the lower section of the screen displays the following information about the collection.

- title
- description
- ID number
- template
- last user who edited it
- last date when it was edited
- date it was created
- whether or not the content folder's sub-folders can be included
- for each content block in the collection
  - a link to the block (click this to view and edit the block)
  - ID number
  - internal URL link to the block

#### **Collections Toolbar**

The following table describes the Collections toolbar buttons.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
÷	Add	Add items to a collection.	"Creating a Collection" on page 128
	Remove	Remove items from a collection.	"Removing Content Blocks from the Collection" on page 136
₹↓	Reorder	Reorder items in a collection.	"Reordering Collections List" on page 137

Button	Name	Description	More Information
	Edit	Edit collection information.	"Editing Collection Information" on page 138
Ū	Delete	Delete a collection.	"Deleting a Collection" on page 139
÷	Back	Return to previous screen.	

### **Creating a Collection**

Creating a collection involves two steps:

- "Adding a Collection" on page 128
- "Assigning Content Blocks to the Collection" on page 131

The following sections explain each step.

#### **Adding a Collection**

**NOTE** You cannot add a collection from the **Modules** > **Collections** folder. You must access the content block then click the Collections button to add a collection.

To add a new collection, follow these steps.

1. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.

Workarea   Image: Syndication View Collections in Folder: "Support"   Image: Syndication Image: Syndication   Image: Syndication Image: Syndication	🚈 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for John Edit - Micros	oft I	nternet Explorer		
Content   I192.168.0.171/CMK   Content   Itile   ID   Date Modified   URL Link   Support Packages   3   27-Oct-2003 06:55 PM   CMS300Sample/support.asp	ITAS			Workarea		
Content   Modules	🗉 🕂 🛪	View Collections i	n Fa	lder: "Support"		
Content   Content   Comms   Content   Content	🗁 192.168.0.171/СМS	<b>⊹</b> ←			stern te mie mie nie state nie mie mie mie mie mie.	
Content Content Forms Library Modules	Content Content Forms Human Resour Marketing Content Products Content Products	<u>Title</u>	-			t.asp
	Content					

- 2. Click the Add button ( $\stackrel{\bullet}{\Box}$ ).
- 3. The Add Collection screen appears.

Add Collectio ₽←	on
Title:	New Collection
Template:	/CMS300Sample/index.asp
Leave the al	oove template empty if you wish to use the Quicklinks
Description:	New collection with various content blocks
🗹 Include S	Subfolders

Field	Description
Title	Assign a unique title to the collection.
Template	Enter the default template for the collection. This template is used to display the content of the links generated if no template is assigned in the custom function.
	If left blank, the links use their respective quicklinks.
	See Also: "Default Template vs. Quicklinks" on page 130
Description	Add a more detailed description for the collection.
Include Sub-folders	Check if you want to add to the collection content blocks in sub-folders of the content folder.

4. Complete the screen using the following table.

5. Click the Save button ( $\blacksquare$ ).

You can now assign content blocks to the collection. See "Assigning Content Blocks to the Collection" on page 131.

#### Default Template vs. Quicklinks

You can specify a template that determines the screen display for a collection when it is published on a Web page. (See your system administrator for more information about **Ektron CMS200/300** templates.)

Or, you can disable the template and, instead, cause the collection to use quicklinks to determine the display when the collection is published. (*See Also:* "Quicklinks" on page 119)

Here is an example of links using a template.

Title	ID	URL Link	
Home Page Content	1	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=1	
Support Page	port Page 8 /CMS300Sample/i		
Plastic Molder #123	13	3 /CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=13	
RC Cheetah	5	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=5	
RC Redstar	7	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=7	
New Content Block	17	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=17	
Contact Ektron	15	5 /CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=15	

Here is an example of links using quicklinks.

Title	ID	ORE LINK	
Home Page Content	1	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=1	
Support Page	8	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=8	
Plastic Molder #123	13	/CMS300Sample/hr.asp?id=13	
RC Cheetah	5	/CMS300Sample/products.asp?id=5	
RC Redstar	7	/CMS300Sample/products.asp?id=7	
New Content Block	17	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=17	
Contact Ektron	15	/CMS300Sample/index.asp?id=15	

To toggle between a default template and quicklinks, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the Edit Collection screen for the collection you wish to edit.
- 2. Remove the template from the **Template** field.
- 3. Click the save (🗳) button.

#### **Assigning Content Blocks to the Collection**

After a collection is created, your next step is to assign content blocks to it. To do so, follow these steps.

- Access the collections screen for the content folder in which you want to add the collection, as described in "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122.
- 2. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.
- 3. Click the collection to which you want to assign content blocks.



4. The View Collection screen appears.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for Application Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Sitron Constant	Workarea	
🗉 🕂 🛪	View Collection "Support Packages"	
Content Content Content Forms Human Resour Content Human Resour Marketing Content Human Resour	P ■ 2↓ D 1 ←     Title     Basic     Gold     Platinum     More info	
Content		
III Modules Administrate Done	Internet	

- 5. Click the add button ( $\stackrel{\bullet}{\Box}$ ).
- 6. The Add Items to Collection screen appears, displaying content blocks in the selected folder that are not part of the collection.

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workare	a for Application A	dministrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer			
	Workarea				
🗉 🕂 🛪	Add items to Collection "Support Packages"				
🫅 192.168.0.171/СМ5	-→ � �				
🖮 🧰 <u>Content</u>					
Forms	Foldername: "				
🖲 🛅 <u>Human Resour</u>	<u>Title</u>	ID Date Modified			
🖲 🧰 <u>Marketing</u>	🗖 Silver	20 27-Oct-2003 06:45 PM			
🖲 🛅 <u>Products</u>					
e Constant Support					
🖲 🚞 Syndication					
<u>ا</u>					
🔁 Content					
🕄 Forms					
🔜 Library					
💴 Modules					
뤚 Administrate					
🕘 Done		📄 📄 👹 Internet	1.		

7. Check boxes next to content blocks that you want to link to from the collection. You can only add content blocks that exist in the selected folder or possibly its sub-folders. (sub-folders are available if the **Include subfolders** field was checked when the collection was created or last edited.)

If a collection includes sub-folders, you can add content blocks from the sub-folders. On the View Collection screen, click a sub-folder to view its content blocks.

Foldername: "Content"		
<u>Title</u>	ID	D
Human Resources		
Marketq		
Syndication		
Contact Ektron	15	2
Login Information	2	2

(To return to the parent folder, click the folder with the up arrow (1).

- 8. Check off boxes next to the content blocks whose links you want to add to the collection.
- **NOTE** If you select a content block from a sub-folder, click the add button to add the selected content to the collection. Navigating between sub-folders deselects content blocks.
  - 9. Click the add button ( $\stackrel{\bullet}{\Box}$ ).

#### Creating a New Content Block for a Collection

You can create a new content block while adding content block links to a collection. To add a content block, follow these steps.

- Access the collections screen for the content folder in which you want to add the collection, as described in "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122.
- 2. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.

- 3. Click the add button ( $\textcircled{\Box}$ ).
- 4. The Add Items to Collection screen appears.
- If your collection includes sub-folders and you want to add the content block to one of them, navigate to that sub-folder. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.
- 6. Click the Add Content button ([]).
- 7. The add content screen appears.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Add	Content "News" - Microsoft Internet Explorer	<u>- 0 ×</u>
	Add Content	
😅 😼 🗞 🖬	1 ×	-
Title:		
Comment:		
🗹 Add to Quickli	inks table 🗵 Content Searchable	
Start Date:	🐱 End Date:	•
🛛 🛃 (Apply Style)	🔹 Normal 🔹 Verdana 🔹 2 (10 pt) 🔹 🛕 🎥 🗷 🖳 A	
X 🖻 🛍 🗎 🛛	🕈 🛱 ቶ 🖣 🖉 🗠 🐃 🚏 📧 🕕 🍓 🍓 🎒 🗕 🕳 🏈 📖 🕅	
<b>A</b> x <sup>2</sup> x <sub>2</sub>   nbsp	◎ ◎ ™ € i ▼    ⊞ 中    🖻 🐼 🖋    🗄 Ε 🕼 🛊   🖹 ≣ 🗮 🧱 😋	
		<u> </u>
C Done loading		-
ej vone loading		11.

- 8. Create the content block.
- **NOTE** Refer to "Adding a Content Block" on page 36 for additional information for creating new content blocks.
  - 9. Click a workflow option in the Add Content screen.
  - 10. The Add Content screen closes, and the new content block link appears in the list of links available to the collection.

11. Check off the content block link you created as well as any other content blocks.



12. Click the add button (<sup>1</sup>) to add the content block links to the collection.

## **Editing Content Blocks in a Collection**

After a collection is created, you can add or remove content block links to and from it.

### Adding Content Blocks to the Collection

For information about adding content block links to a collection, see "Assigning Content Blocks to the Collection" on page 131.

### **Removing Content Blocks from the Collection**

To remove a content block link from a collection, follow these steps.

- Access the collections screen for the content folder in which you want to add the collection, as described in "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122.
- 2. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126
- 3. Click the Remove button  $(\square)$ .
- 4. The Delete Items from Collection screen appears.

5. Click boxes next to links that you want to delete.

Select All Clear All		
Title	ID	UR
Home Page Content	1	/Cl
Support Page	8	/Cl
✓ Plastic Molder #123	13	/Cl
RC Cheetah	5	/Cl
RC Redstar	7	/Cl
Contact Ektron	15	/Cl
🗋 New Content Block	17	/Cl

Click **Select All** to select all boxes. Click **Clear All** to remove all check marks.

6. Click the delete button  $(\square)$ .

## **Reordering Collections List**

After a collection is created, and more than one content block is assigned to it, you can reorder the collections list. To do so, follow these steps.

- Access the collections screen for the content folder in which you want to add the collection, as described in "Finding a Collection by Navigating to its Content Folder" on page 122.
- 2. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126
- 3. Click the Reorder button  $(2\downarrow)$ .
- 4. The reorder collection screen appears.

Ektron CMS300 Workarea for A	pplication Administrator - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
CMs300	WORKAREA	User: admin Friday, May 28, 2004
🗉 🕈 🛛 🗖	Reorder Collection "Support Packages"	
<ul> <li>Content</li> <li>Human Resources</li> <li>Marketing</li> <li>Products</li> <li>Support</li> <li>Internal Support</li> <li>Syndication</li> </ul>	Internal Support Policies         RC International Support         Support Request Form	<b>•</b>
Content Content Forms Library Modules Settings		Tohunah
E Done		] Internet

- 5. Click the content block link whose order you want to change.
- 6. Click the up or down arrow to move the content block link in either direction.
- 7. Repeat steps five and six until you set the desired order.
- 8. Click the Update button (H).

## **Editing Collection Information**

To edit information about a collection, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.
- 2. Click the collection whose information you want to change.
- Change any of the field values. For documentation of the fields, see "Complete the screen using the following table." on page 130.

## **Deleting a Collection**

When you no longer want a collection, you can delete it. To delete a collection, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the View Collection Screen, as described in "Viewing a Collection" on page 126.
- 2. Click the Delete button ( $\square$ ).
- 3. A confirmation message appears.
- 4. Click OK to proceed.

# **Working with Calendars**

Calendars in **Ektron CMS200/300** perform the same function as a paper calendar: they keep one or more users informed about upcoming events. However, they can be shared with all visitors to your Web site, and any authorized user can add events to a calendar.

Typical calendar events could include

- company meeting
- reserving a conference room for an interview
- company holidays
- deadlines

These are only a few uses of calendar events. Calendars are very versatile and can easily meet all of your calendar needs.

A sample calendar appears below.

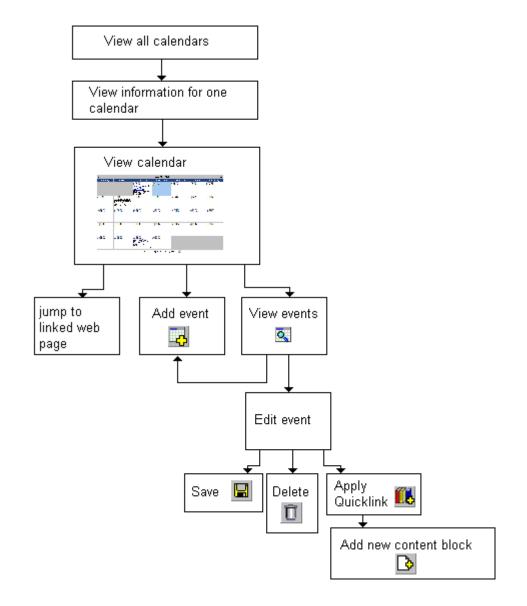
		June 2004			<u>Juli</u>
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
	RC International Hosts RC	2 🖪 🔍	3 🛃 🔍	4 🖪 🔍	5 🖪
7 <b>C</b> RC International Ships RC Sportster Location: Chicago Start: 12:00 AM End: 12:00 AM	8 .	9 6 9	10 🛃	<u>11</u> <b>.</b>	12 .
14 💽	15 🖪 🔍	16 .	17 6 🔍	18 <b>°° (</b>	19 🖪 🔍
21 .	22 🖪 🔍	23 🖪 🔍	24 <b>• • •</b>	25 <b>• a 9</b>	26 🐱 🔍
28 🐱 🔍	29 Content of the second secon	30 🐱 🔍			
	7 Contentional RC International Ships RC Sportster Location: Chicago Start: 12:00 AM Ind: 12:00 AM 14 Content 21 Contention 21 Contention 28 Contention Contenti Contention Contention Contention Contention Contention Conte	1       0         RC International Hosts RC       Conference         Location: testing Jedit       Statistics (00 PM)         RC International       Ships RC Sportster         Location: Chicago       Statistics (00 PM)         Id       0         14       0         15       0         21       0         21       0         22       0         23       0         24       0         25       0         26       0         27       0         28       0         29       0         20       0         21       0         22       0         23       0         24       0         25       0         26       0         27       0         28       0         29       0         20       0         21       0         22       0         23       0         24       0         25       0         26       0	1       0       2       0         RC International Hosts RC Conference Location: testing Jedit Start: 5:00 PM       2       0         7       0       0       0       0         8       0       0       0       0         8       0       0       0       0         14       0       15       0       0       0         14       0       15       0       16       0         21       0       22       0       23       0       0         21       0       22       0       23       0       0         28       0       0       0       0       0       0         28       0       0       0       0       0       0         28       0       0       0       0       0       0       0         28       0 <t< td=""><td>1       1</td><td>Image: Second second</td></t<>	1       1	Image: Second

Filter By Event Type: All Event Types **•** 

## **Understanding Calendars**

Before you begin working with calendars, you should understand the following key points.

- Ektron CMS200/300 supports several calendars at one time. ٠ There might be a site-wide calendar, and other calendars for special interests, such as an athletic events calendar.
- Each calendar displays one month of dates at a time. Each date can display several events.
- Only system administrators can create a calendar. •
- Each calendar is assigned to a content folder (See Also: • "Working with Folders and Content Blocks" on page 27). You can view and (if granted permission to edit the calendar's folder) add, edit and remove calendar events.
- The following illustrates the workflow of calendar tasks.



### **Understanding Event Types**

Your system administrator can set up types of calendar events. For a personal or workgroup calendar, examples might be staff meetings, employment interviews, conference calls, etc. For an educational institution, examples might be academic deadlines, sporting events, and tuition due dates. If you assign a type to an event while creating it, you can later display only events of that type. This feature lets you temporarily suppress unwanted events. As a result, the display is cleaner, and it is quicker to find relevant information on the calendar.

### **Organization of this Chapter**

This chapter explains all of the tasks you can perform with calendars through the following subtopics.

- "Accessing the List of Calendars" on page 143
- "Viewing a Calendar" on page 147
- "Viewing a Calendar Event" on page 149
- "Adding a Calendar Event" on page 151
- "Adding a New Content Block for a Calendar Event" on page 156
- "Editing Calendar Events" on page 159
- "Deleting Calendar Events" on page 161

## Accessing the List of Calendars

To access the calendar screen, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the Modules folder, which appears in the lower left corner of the Workarea.
- 2. Click the Calendars folder.



3. The Calendar Modules screen appears. It lists all calendars currently in the system.

Ektron CMS300 Workarea for J	ohn Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer	<u> </u>
CMs300	U WORKAREA Wednesday, June	lser: jedit 02, 2004
<b>≣ ₽ x</b>	Calendar modules	
Modules	Title     ID     Description       RC International Calendar     1     listing of events for RC International news events	Path \
⊖́		
🚯 Content		
🖏 Forms		
🔜 Library		
🔠 Modules		
😼 Settings		
E Done	📄 📄 🚺 🐌 Internet	11.

**NOTE** Only system administrators can create a new calendar.

4. Click any calendar.

5. The View Calendar screen appears, showing information about the selected calendar.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for J	ohn Edit - Microsoft In	ternet Explorer	
CMs300	WOR	User: jedit KAREA Tuesday, June 01, 2004	
🗉 🕂 🗙	View Calendar "R	C International Calendar"	
🗁 Modules	31 ←		
Collections			
🛡 🧰 Menus	Title:	RC International Calendar	
🗏 🗁 <u>Calendars</u>	ID:	1	
	Description:	listing of events for RC International news events	
	Location Label:	Location:	
	Start Time Label:	Start:	
	End Time Label:	End:	
	Table Properties:		
	Cell Height: 90 p	pixels	
	Cell Width: 150 pixels		
	✓ Display Weekends		
	Event Types:		
R Content	Event Type		
-	Label:		
S Forms	× Event Types A		
🔜 Library	× Event Types	Required	
III Modules	Folder Name	News	
🥵 Settings	Folder Name		
	FUIDER Paul	\Marketing\News	
🙋 Done		🔹 📄 🔮 Internet	

The following table explains the fields on the View Calendar screen.

Field	Description
Title	Title given to the calendar.
ID	ID number automatically assigned to calendar. This is used to display the calendar on a Web page.
Description	Description given to the calendar.
Location Label	Label for the calendar's location information. This label appears on the calendar when a location is assigned to a calendar event.
Start Time Label	Label for the calendar's start time. This appears on the calendar when a start time is assigned to a calendar event.
End Time Label	Label for the calendar's end time data. This appears on the calendar when an end time is assigned to a calendar event.
Cell Height	Height of cells in the calendar. Helps determine the size of each calendar date's block.
Cell Width	Width of cells in the calendar. Helps determine the size of each calendar date's block.
Display Weekends	A green check ( <sup>✓</sup> ) means the calendar displays weekends. A red X ( <sup>×</sup> ) means the calendar does not.

Field	Description
Event Types Event Type Event Types Available Event Types Required	Indicates if event types are assigned to this calendar. See Also: "Understanding Event Types" on page 142
Folder Name	Name of content folder to which the calendar is assigned for permission purposes. You can only add, edit or delete events for calendars in folders to which you have been granted permissions.
Folder Path	Complete folder path of content folder to which calendar is assigned.

The view calendar screen may contain the following toolbar buttons that let you perform other tasks.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
31	View Calendar	Shows calendar in the workarea.	"Viewing a Calendar" on page 147
÷	Back	Return to previous screen.	

## Viewing a Calendar

To view a calendar, perform the following steps:

- Access the view calendar screen for the calendar you want to see, as described in "Accessing the List of Calendars" on page 143.
- 2. Click the View Calendar ( 🚮 ) button.

3. The calender appears
-------------------------

Show Calendar				
April		May 2004		Juni
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
3 <b>- C</b>	4 📴 🔍	5 🔤 🔍	6 🖸	7 🚾 🔍
0 5	11 🐱 🔍	12 🖪 🔍	13 🖪 🔍	14 🔽
7 🚾 🔍	18 😋 🔍	19 🖪 🔍	20 &	21 🖪
a <b>Da O</b>		as <b>Ta O</b>		

 If you want to view only events of a certain type, click the Filter by Event Type button (illustrated below). Then, select the type of events you want to view. See Also: "Understanding Event Types" on page 142

Filter By Event Type:	All Event Types 🛛 💌
	All Event Types
	staff meeting
	company meeting 🛛 🗧
.l	birthday celebration 🛛 🗖

The page is refreshed, and the calendar only displays events of that type.

**NOTE** The style sheet applied to the calendar in the workarea is different from the one applied to the calendar on the sample Web site.

From here, you can perform the following tasks. Note that the Add and View buttons appear on each calendar day, while the Return button is on the toolbar at the top of the screen.

Click on	Action	More Information
E.	Add Calendar Event	"Adding a Calendar Event" on page 151
	View Calendar Events	"Viewing a Calendar Event" on page 149
←	Return to Previous Screen	Return to previous screen
Event title within calendar (sample below)	Jump to calendar event's Web page (if available)	
/ IIII IIII RC International Announces the RC Cheetah		

## Viewing a Calendar Event

Once events are added to a calendar, you can easily view them. To view a calendar event, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the show calendar screen for the calender that contains the event you want to view, as described in "Viewing a Calendar" on page 147.
- 2. Place the cursor on the event you want to view.

April		May 2004		June
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
3 🖬 🔍	Weekly meeting Location: New York Room Start: 12:00 AM End: 1:00 PM	5 🖪 🔍	6 🖪 🔍	7 🖪 🔍
10 🐱 🔍	11 CONTRACTOR OF THE	12 ••• 🔍	13 🔤 🔍	14 💀 🔍
17 6	18 CANANT CONTRACT OF CONTRACT Weekly meeting Location: New York Room Start: 12:00 AM End: 1:00 PM	19 <b>Ed Q.</b>	20 🔤 🔍	21 🖪 🔍
24 💽 🔍	25 Content of the second secon	26 🖪 🔍	27 🔤 🔍	28 🖪 🔍
31 🐱 🔍				

- 3. Click the View Date ( 🔯 ) button.
- 4. The view events screen appears listing all calender events for that date.

From the view calendar events screen, you can perform the following functions:

- Add a new calendar event
- View, edit, and delete an existing calendar event

## Adding a Calendar Event

NOTE		a can only add a calendar event if you have add permission for the folder to ich the event is assigned.
	То	add a calendar event, follow these steps.
	1.	Access the calendar to which you want to add an event, as described in "Viewing a Calendar" on page 147.
Νοτε		u can also add a calendar event after viewing the View Events screen. See to: "Viewing a Calendar Event" on page 149
	2.	Navigate to the month and day for which you want to add a calendar event. To proceed to the month prior to the current display, click the month's name in the top left corner (see illustration). To proceed to the month following the current one, click the month's name in the top right corner.

May			June 2004
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday
		1	2 🔤 🔍
		RC International Hosts RC Conference	

- 3. Click the Add Event ( Transition ) button.
- 4. The add calendar event screen appears.

**NOTE** Folder information only appears at the bottom of the screen if the folder has subfolders or content blocks under it.

Add Calendar Event
₽ 🗅 ←
Event Title
Event Location
One Time Recurring
Date 3-May-2004
Start Time 12:00 AM 🔽
End Time 12:00 AM
☑ Display the times for the event
Display the times for the event  Hyperlink
Hyperlink
Hyperlink
Hyperlink Make the Hyperlink active Launch link in a new browser.
Hyperlink Make the Hyperlink active Launch link in a new browser. Root Folder News
Hyperlink Make the Hyperlink active Launch link in a new browser. Root Folder News Folder Path \Marketing\News

5. Respond to the fields using the following table as a reference.

Field	Description
Event Title	Enter a title for the calendar event.
Event Location	If desired, enter a location for the event (for example, Conference Room 1 or Cafeteria).
One Time/ Recurring	If you want to enter a one-time only event, continue reading. If you want to add a recurring event, see "Adding a Recurring Event" on page 154.
Date	Click the calendar button ( <sup>IIIA</sup> ) to display a calendar. From it, select a start date.

Field	Description
Start Time	Enter a starting time for the event. You can enter as few characters as needed. For example, to specify one o'clock, you can enter 1.
End Time	Enter an ending time for the event.
Display times for the event	Check this box if you want the calendar to display the event's start and end times (illustrated below). 16 <b>Dirthday party</b> Location: New York Room Start: 1:00 PM End: 3:00 PM
Hyperlink	You can link a Web page to this calendar event. The Web page could contain more information about the event, directions to it, etc. If you link a Web page, when this event appears on the calendar, the reader can click the event to jump to that page. To enter any page on the internet, enter its Web address here. For example, www.ektron.com. To link to a content block on your Web site, click the library button (III). (This type of link is known as a <i>quicklink</i> .) The Quicklinks dialog appears, and you can navigate to that content block. Note: You can add a new content block from the Quicklink dialog. See "Adding a New Content Block for a Calendar Event" on page 156
Make the Hyperlink Active	Check this box to activate the link assigned in the <b>Hyperlink</b> field. If you do, when a user views the calendar, he can click the event to "jump" to the specified Web page.
Launch link in a new browser	Check this box if you want the Web page specified in the <b>Hyperlink</b> field to appear in a new browser window when someone clicks it.

Field	Description
Event Types	Note: This field only appears if your system
	administrator has set up one or more event types for this event.
	See Also: "Understanding Event Types" on page 142
	To apply an event type to this event, click an available Event Type in the column on the right.
	Then, click the Right Arrow ()) to move the event type to the <b>Selected</b> column.
	Repeat for each event type you want to assign to the event.

#### NOTE

- For information about adding a new content block while adding a calendar event, see "Adding a New Content Block for a Calendar Event" on page 156.
  - 6. Click Save ( 🔛 ).

### Adding a Recurring Event

You can assign an event to occur multiple times on a calendar. To do so, follow these steps.

- 1. Add a calendar event (as described in "Adding a Calendar Event" on page 151) or edit one (as described in "Editing Calendar Events" on page 159).
- 2. Click the **Recurring** tab to assign the event for more than one day.

One Time	Recurring		
Start Date: 🛛 Number of E		End Date: N/A	
Event will or	cur:	Event times:	
💿 Every da	зу		
O Every Su	ın	Start: 12:00	AM 💌
C Every 6t	h of every Month	End: 12:00	AM 👻
O Every fir	st Sun of every Month	,	
O Yearly, e	every 6th of Jun		
O Yearly, e	every first Sun of Jun		
		🗹 Display the time	es for the event

#### 3. Refer to the table below to respond to the Recurring fields.

Field	Description
Start Date	Enter the date on which the calendar event first appears.
End Date	Enter the date on which the calendar event stops displaying.
Number of events to be created	(Display only field) The number of times the event will occur. This value changes as you modify the <b>Event Will Occur</b> field values, below.
Event will occur	Select the frequency of the event from among the choices.
Event times	Select the start and end times for the events.
Display the times for the event	Check this box if you want the calendar to display start and end times (illustrated below). 16 birthday party Location: New York Room Start: 1:00 PM End: 3:00 PM

4. Finish your edits.

For documentation of	See
Hyperlink	"Hyperlink" on page 153
Make Hyperlink Active	"Make the Hyperlink Active" on page 153
Launch Link in New Browser	"Launch link in a new browser" on page 153
Event Types	"Event Types" on page 154

5. Click the **Save** button ( $\square$ ).

## Adding a New Content Block for a Calendar Event

While adding a new event to a calendar, you can add a new content block to the Web site. You might use the new content block to supply additional information about the event.

To do so, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the Add Calendar event screen, as described in "Adding a Calendar Event" on page 151.
- 2. The content folder tree, at the bottom of the Add Calendar Event screen, defaults to the calendar's content folder.

3. Navigate through the folder tree to the content folder that will store the new content block.

Add Calendar Event
⊒ 🕞 ←
Event Title
Event Location
One Time Recurring
Date 4-May-2004 🐱
Start Time 12:00 AM
End Time 12:00 AM
☑ Display the times for the event
Hyperlink
Make the Hyperlink active
Launch link in a new browser.
Root Folder News
Folder Path \Marketing\News
<u>کا</u>
RC International Announces the RC Cheetah
RC International Hosts RC Conference
C RC International Ships RC Sportster
D <u>test</u>

4. Click the Add Content ( ]) toolbar button.

🦉 E	ktron CM5300 Add C	Content "News" - Microsoft I	Internet Explorer			_ 🗆 ×
	Stron STAN		Add Con	tent		
	📝 📝 🖏 🖬 🖬	×	u to be rith her to de rith her to her rith her to her rith her rith he			<u> </u>
	Title:					
	Comment:				]	
	🗹 Add to Quicklin	nks table 🗹 Content Se	earchable			
	Start Date:		🛛 📧 🛛 End Date: 🗌			
	🛃 (Apply Style)	<ul> <li>Normal</li> <li>Verda</li> </ul>	ana 🔹 2 (10 pt)	• 🛕 🗞	BIUA	
	X 🖻 🛍 🗋 🛛	) 🛱 M M, 🚑 👂 💌	🕶   💖 😐   🖊 🍓 🐝	前 🔶 – 🛛	3 🌽 💷 🕅	
	$\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x^2} \mathbf{x_2}$ nbsp	®®™€; ∙ ∐⊞⊏	>   🖻 🖸 🖈 🗍 🏣 🗄	ᅊᆥᆙᆝ태	E 🗏 🗏 🦉 🤮	
						<b>A</b>
	s 1 li					
e	Oone loading				🌍 Internet	11.

5. The add new content screen appears.

- Enter information for the new content block and click on a workflow button from the toolbar at the top of the screen. For more information about creating a content block, see "Adding a Content Block" on page 36.
- 7. The content is saved, the window closes, and the add calendar event screen appears with the new content block added to the content tree.
- 8. Click the title of the new content block.

9. The title and quicklink fields are populated with information about the selected content block.

Add Calendar Event
🖬 🕃 ←
Event Title test
Event Location
One Time Recurring
Date 3-May-2004 📧
Start Time 12:00 AM
End Time 12:00 AM
☑ Display the times for the event
Hyperlink * /CMS300Sample/news.asp?id=28
☑ Make the Hyperlink active
🗖 Launch link in a new browser.
Root Folder News
Folder Path \Marketing\News
🖻 <u></u>
RC International Announces the RC Cheetah
D <u>RC International Hosts RC Conference</u>
C RC International Ships RC Sportster

- 10. Make changes to the displayed fields using the table described in "Respond to the fields using the following table as a reference." on page 152as a reference.
- 11. Click Save ( 🔛 ).

## **Editing Calendar Events**

NOTE

You can only edit a calendar event if you have edit permission for the folder to which the event is assigned.

Once a calendar event has been added for a calender, you may edit it to change the title, location, times, etc. To edit a calendar event, perform the following steps:

- 1. Access the view calender events screen for the date that contains the event you wish to edit, as described in "Viewing a Calendar Event" on page 149.
- 2. Click the event you wish to edit.
- 3. The Edit Calendar Event screen appears.

Edit Calendar	Event
-> fì ĵì 🖪	
Event Title	weekly meeting
One Time	n New York Room
	Recurring
🗹 Update -	all recurring events associated with this event.
Start Date: Number of I	
Event will o Every day	ccur: Event times:
Every Tue	Start: 12:00:00 AM 💌
Every first <sup>-</sup> Yearly, eve	of every Month Tue of every Month End: 1:00:00 PM 💌 ry 4th of Apr ry first Tue of Apr
	Display the times for the event
Hyperlink	
🗆 Make th	e Hyperlink active
🗆 Laun	ch link in a new browser
Root Folder	News
Folder Path	\Marketing\News
D <u>RC Interr</u>	national Announces the RC Cheetah national Hosts RC Conference
C RC Interr	national Ships RC Sportster

- 4. Make changes to the displayed fields using the table described in "Respond to the fields using the following table as a
  - reference." on page 152as a reference.
- 5. Click Save ( 🔛 ).

## **Deleting Calendar Events**

**NOTE** You can only delete a calendar event if you have delete permission for the folder to which the event is assigned.

You can easily delete calendar events that are no longer needed, or do not belong to the calendar they were added to.

To delete a calendar event, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the view calender events screen for the date that contains the event you wish to delete, as described in "Viewing a Calendar Event" on page 149.
- 2. Click the event you want to delete.
- 3. The edit calendar event screen appears.

Edit Calendar E	vent
🛛 🛈 🕞 ←	
Event Title	weekly meeting
Event Location	New York Room
One Time	Recurring
🗹 Update a	I recurring events associated with this event.
Start Date: 4 Number of E	
Event will oc Every day	cur: Event times:
Every Tue	Start: 12:00:00 AM 💌
	every Month
Every first Tu Yearly, every	ue of every Month End: 1:00:00 PM
	/ first Tue of Apr
	☑ Display the times for the event
Hyperlink	
🗆 Make the	Hyperlink active
🗆 Launci	h link in a new browser
Root Folder	News
Folder Path	\Marketing\News
<b>t</b>	
D <u>RC Interna</u>	ational Announces the RC Cheetah
C <sub>RC Interna</sub>	ational Hosts RC Conference
•	ational Ships RC Sportster

- 4. Click Delete ( 📋 ).
- 5. A confirmation message appears.
- 6. Click OK.

# **Updating Your User Profile**

When a new user is added to an Ektron CMS200/300 Web site, the administrator sets up a personal profile for him. It contains information such as password and e-mail address. You can update some of your personal profile information when needed.

This section explains how to modify your personal profile.

## **Viewing Your Profile**

Before changing your personal profile, you must view it. To do so, follow these steps.

# 1. Access your Smart Desktop. *See Also:* "Understanding the Smart Desktop" on page 15

Ektron CM5300 Workarea for J	ohn Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer
CMS300	User: jedit WORKAREA Wednesday, June 02, 2004
<b>≡ ∓ x</b>	Smart Desktop for John Edit
➢ Smart Desktop → ☐ Tasks → ☐ Reports Approvals	Content Awaiting Approval (3)
Checked In Content Checked Out Conte Checked Out Conte New Content Repor	Content Currently Checked Out (3)
Content Pending St Expired Content Rer	Tasks (0)
Content	
Forms	
Settings	
Done Conce	📄 📄 👔 Internet

#### 2. From the lower left frame, click Settings.

🚯 Content	
🖏 Forms	
🔜 Library	
💴 Modules	
🛃 Settings	
	and the

3. From the top left frame, click **User Profile**.



4. Your user profile appears.

View User Inform	ation "jedit"
D	
Username:	jedit
First Name:	John
Last Name:	Edit
User Language:	App Default
E-Mail Address:	[None Specified]
E-Mail Notification	is: E-Mail Disabled
This User currentl <ul> <li>Everyone</li> </ul>	y belongs to these User Groups:
Click the edit button (	) in the top left corner.

6. The Edit User Information screen appears. The following table explains the fields on it that you can edit.

Field	Description	
Password	If desired, enter a new password into this field.	
	If you change your password, you do not need to log out then log back in. However, the next time you log in, you must use the new password.	
Confirm Pwd	Confirm your new password by retyping it into this field.	
User Language	Select a new language in which to view the Ektron CMS200/300 Web site. Click the black down arrow on the right (circled below) to see a list of choices.	
	User Language: English (US) E-Mail Address: App Default English (US) ✓ Disable E-Ma	
E-mail Address	Enter a new valid e-mail address. Notification e-mails are sent to this e-mail address unless the <b>Disable E-</b> <b>mail Notification</b> field is checked. To understand how email notification operates within the content workflow, see"Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198.	
Disable E- mail Notification	Check this box if you do not want to receive notification e-mails.	

7. Click the update button ( $\blacksquare$ ).

# Accessing Online Help

The help folder provides access to important and useful information about using Ektron CMS200/300. It gives you a library of all manuals plus links to relevant pages on Ektron's Web site. We provide this information to make it easier to learn about our Content Management system.

To access the help folder, follow these steps.

# 1. Access your Smart Desktop. See Also: "Understanding the Smart Desktop" on page 15

🖉 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for J	ohn Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
CMS300	WORKAREA	User: jedit Wednesday, June 02, 2004
🗉 🕂 🗙	Smart Desktop for John Edit	
➢ Smart Desktop I asks G Peports Approvals	Content Awaiting Approval (3)	
Checked In Content Checked Out Conte New Content Repor	Content Currently Checked Out (3)	
Content Pending St Expired Content Reg	🖉 <u>Tasks</u> (0)	
······		
🗟 Content 🕄 Forms 🔜 Library		
Modules		
Done		🔮 Internet 🥢

#### 2. From the lower left frame, click Settings.

🚯 Content
🖏 Forms
😹 Library
🛄 Modules
🥵 Settings
- <u> </u>

3. From the top left frame, click Help.



4. The help screen appears in the right frame.

Manu	CMS300 Help
• /	<u>)eveloper Manual</u> Administrator Quickstart Manual Administrator Manual Jser Manual Setup Manual
Ektro	n Web Site Online Resources
•	<u>(isit Help Page on Ektron.com</u> <u>Vhat's new with Ektron CMS300</u> <u>:ktron CMS300 Feature Tour</u> earning Center

- Learning Center
   Developer Resources
- Have a question?
- <u>Request a demo from Ektron</u>
- 5. Click on a link to open the manual or Web page.

**NOTE** Your computer requires an internet connection to access the online resource links.

# **Searching for Content**

Some Ektron CMS200/300 Web pages include a search window.

Search
Ill the words
${f C}$ Any of the words
C Exact Phrase
🗖 Match Partial Words

To use this window, enter one or more words into the text box provided, select search options, then click the Search button. Ektron CMS200/300 then searches all searchable content blocks on the Web site and displays a list of blocks that contain those words. You can click a content block to view its content.

**NOTE** When a content block is being created or edited, the **Content Searchable** field lets the user decide to include or exclude that content block from the search. The search ignores content blocks that are not searchable.

## **Search Options**

Before you select a search option, it is helpful to understand each one. To explain how each works, assume you enter these words into the search text field:

- Partners
- Content
- Monday
- Employee
- Green

Now let's look at the results of each option.

#### All the Words

If you select **All the Words**, your search only finds content blocks that include *all* words entered in the search text field.

**NOTE** This works like an AND function. It returns all content blocks that have the words Partners AND Content AND Monday AND Employee AND Green.

#### Any of the Words

The **Any of the Words** option is almost the opposite. This option returns all content blocks that include *at least one* of the words entered in the search text field.

**NOTE** This works like an OR function. It returns content blocks that include the words Partners OR Content OR Monday OR Employee OR Green.

#### **Exact Phrase**

If you select **Exact Phrase**, the search only finds content blocks that have all five words *in the order specified* in the search text field.

A better example would be the phrase, "Content Management Solution." The search would yield only content blocks that include that phrase.

#### **Match Partial Words**

Although you cannot search for wild cards, the "Match Partial Words" option does almost the same. For example, enter "at" into the search text field, then check the "Match Partial Words" box. When you run the search, it returns all content blocks with the letters "at". This search could find words such as **At**, **Bat**, **Chat**ter, **At**oll, **AT**M, etc.

Note that, unlike the other search options, you can include or exclude the partial word option *in addition to* the other three options (All the Words, Any of the Words, Exact Phrase).

# **Managing Tasks**

NOTE

This feature is only available with Ektron CMS300. If you are using CMS200 and want to upgrade to CMS300, please contact your Ektron sales representative at sales@ektron.com.

A task is a request from one user to another to perform an action within **Ektron CMS200/300**. Examples of a tasks include:

- updating content
- publishing a content block
- updating an image
- reordering a collection

The Tasks folder displays all tasks that are either assigned to you or that you assigned to another user or user group. You can also assign tasks to yourself.

A task may or may not be related to a specific content block. If it is, you can access a content block then "attach" a task to it. This kind of task is managed just like the other tasks, but you can also view and update it via the attached content block. For more information, see "Attaching a Task to a Content Block" on page 183.

This chapter explains how to create, edit, and view tasks.

### Accessing the Tasks Folder

To access the Tasks folder, follow these steps.

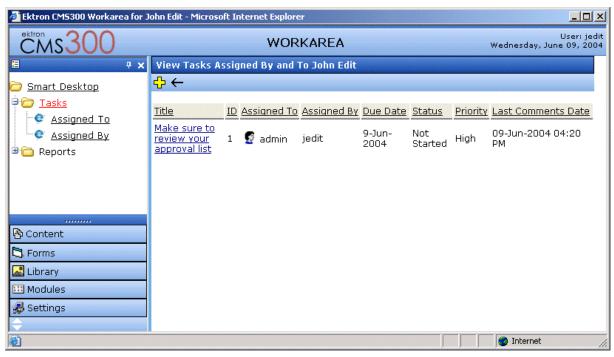
- Access your Smart Desktop, as explained in "Understanding the Smart Desktop" on page 15.
- 2. The Smart Desktop folder hierarchy appears in the top left frame.



- 3. Click the Tasks folder. Two subfolders appear:
- Assigned to tasks assigned to you
- Assigned by tasks that you assigned to someone else

You can click any folder to view only tasks in that category.

Also, the View Tasks screen appears in the right frame, listing all "assigned to" and "assigned by" tasks.



From this page, you can view, update, or add tasks.

#### Sorting Tasks

To sort the information on the View Tasks screen, click any column to sort tasks by that column. For example, if you click **Priority**, all High priority tasks appear first followed by Normal then Low Priority items.

### Creating a Task

To create a task, follow these steps.

- 1. Access your Tasks folder, as described in "Accessing the Tasks Folder" on page 173.
- 2. Click the Add button ( $\leftarrow$ ).
- 3. The Add Task screen appears.
- 4. Enter information for the task using the following table.

Field	Description	
Title	Enter a title for the task (for example, Update Content). The title appears in the left column of the View Tasks screen.	
Assigned To	Your user name appears, followed by <b>Select User or Group</b> . To assign the task to yourself, proceed to the next field. To assign the task to someone else, click <b>Select User or</b> <b>Group and</b> choose a user or group.	
	When you complete the screen, an email is sent to the selected user or user group informing him of the assigned task.	
	Email is only sent to the user or user group if email notification is enabled for Ektron CMS200/300.	
Priority	Select the priority of the task. Your choices are High, Normal and Low. The priority appears on the View Tasks screen. A user can sort tasks on the screen by priority if desired.	

Field	Description	
Status	Choose a status for the task. Your choices are:	
	Not Started	
	In Progress	
	Completed	
	Waiting on Someone else	
	Deferred	
	The status appears on the View Tasks screen. A user can sort tasks on the screen by status if desired.	
Due Date	Using the calendar button, choose the date by which the task needs to be completed.	
	The due date appears on the View Tasks screen. A user can sort tasks on the screen by due date if desired.	
Start Date	Using the calendar button, choose a start date for the task. The start date appears on the View Tasks screen. A user can sort tasks on the screen by start date if desired.	

Field	Description		
Description	Add additional information to describe the task. The description appears on the View Task screen (circled below).		
	View Task		
	[≱ 1] =, ←		
	Task Title: testing self assignment		
	Assigned To: 😴 jedit		
	Assigned By: jedit		
	Priority: High		
	Status: Completed		
	Due Date: 23-Jun-2004		
	Start Date: 11-Jun-2004		
	Description: testing self assignment Comments:		
	Date/Time Added By Comments		

- 5. Click the **Save** button (
- 6. If email notification is enabled, an email is sent to the user/user group the task has been assigned to.

### Viewing a Task

Once a task is added, (with the exception of Administrators) only the user who assigned the task and those to whom the task was assigned can view it.

To view a task, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the Tasks module folder as described in "Accessing the Tasks Folder" on page 173.
- 2. A list of tasks assigned to or by you appears in the right frame.

- 3. Click the task that you want to view.
- 4. The View Task screen appears.



Task Title: Make sure to review your approval list Assigned To: Sadmin Assigned By: jedit

Priority:HighStatus:Not StartedDue Date:11-Jun-2004Start Date:10-Jun-2004

#### Description:

Remember to view your approval list every day, and approve any content blocks on the list

#### Comments:

Date/Time Added By Comments

From the view task page, you can perform these tasks.

- "Editing a Task" on page 178
- "Deleting A Task" on page 182
- "Adding Comments to Tasks" on page 179

### Editing a Task

You can change task information, such as

- Title
- Assigned to
- Priority

- Status
- Due Date
- Start Date
- Description

To edit a task, perform the following steps:

- 1. Access the view task page for the task, as described in "Viewing a Task" on page 177.
- 2. Click the Edit button ([]).
- 3. The Edit Task screen appears.
- 4. Edit the task.
- 5. Click the Update button ( $\square$ ) to save the changes.

### Adding Comments to Tasks

You can add comments to an assigned task if you want to provide additional information about its status. For example, if you update a task's status from *In progress* to *Waiting on Someone Else*, you can use a comment to describe details behind the status change, such as:

left voice mail with John with questions about his changes to the home page

Comments appear at the bottom of the View Tasks screen (Illustrated below).

day for

View Task				
🖸 🗊 🖳 🗲	-			
Task Title:	Make sure to review your approval list			
Assigned To:	🛃 admin			
Assigned By:	jedit			
Priority:	High			
Status:	Not Started			
Due Date:	11-Jun-2004			
Start Date:	10-Jun-2004			
Description:				
Remember to view your approval list every day, and approve any content blocks on the list				
Comments:				
Date/Time Ad	ded By Comments			

	-	
Date/Time	<u>Added By</u>	Comments
<u>10-Jun-</u> 2004		Be sure to check this list every da content blocks needing approval

Several comments can be added to a task to record its progress from assignment to completion.

To add a comment to a task, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the View Task screen for the task, as described in "Viewing a Task" on page 177.
- 2. Click the Add Comment button (
- 3. The Comments window appears.

10:47 AM

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Comments - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
	<b>A</b>
Comments:	
Times New Roman 🔹 3 (12 pt) 🔹 🗛 🍫 🖪 🖌 🖳 A	
※ 🗈 🛍 ち つ 💖 🎫 🍓	
	<u> </u>
	<b>v</b>
	-
Insert Close	
	~
😂 Done loading 👘 👘 🖉 Internet	11.

- 4. Enter your comment in the editor. Note that you can format and spell check the text using the toolbar buttons.
- 5. Click the Insert button (Insert).
- 6. The View Task screen reappears with the comment at the bottom of the page.

#### **Updating Comments**

To update a comment, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the View Task screen that contains the comment you want to update, as described in "Viewing a Task" on page 177.
- 2. Click the comment's Date/Time link (illustrated below).

View Task		
🕑 🗊 🖳 🗲		
Tack Titlo	Make sure to review your approval list	
Assigned To:		
Assigned By	; jedit	
Priority:	High	
Status:	Not Started	
Due Date:	11-Jun-2004	
Start Date:	10-Jun-2004	
Description:		
Remember to view your approval list every day, and approve any content blocks on the list		

#### Comments:

1.				
I	Date/Time <mark>Added By</mark>		Comments	
	<u>10-Jun-</u> 2004 10:47 AM	John Edit	Be sure to check this list every day for content blocks needing approval	

- 3. The Comments window opens with the comment displayed.
- 4. Update the comment.
- 5. Click the **Update** button (Update).

### **Deleting A Task**

You can easily delete a task that is no longer needed. For example, the user who assigned a task would typically delete it when it is completed.

To delete a task, follow these steps.

- 1. Access the View Task screen for the task, as described in "Viewing a Task" on page 177.
- Click the **Delete** button ( 1).
- 3. A confirmation message appears.

4. Click **OK**.

### Attaching a Task to a Content Block

The above section of this chapter describes assigning tasks with no relationship to a content block. However, if appropriate, you can "attach" a task to a content block. You would typically do so if the task involved only one content block.

If you "attach" a task to a content block, the task appears on both the View Tasks screen and the View Content Block screen of the "assigned to" and "assigned by" users. The following graphic illustrates the Create Task and View Task buttons on the View Content screen.

🚰 Ektron CM5300 Workarea for John Edit - Microsoft Internet Explorer				
CMS300		WORKAREA		
<b>∃ ₽ x</b>	View Content "Pla	stic Molder #123"		
😂 <u>Content</u>	<b>&amp;</b> []≩ []←			
🖻 🗁 <u>Human Resources</u>	Content Title:	Plastic Molder #123		
🖲 🛅 <u>Marketing</u>	Content ID:	13		
🖲 🛅 <u>Products</u>	Status:	Checked Out		
🖲 🛅 <u>Sports</u>	Last User To Edit:	admin		
🖲 🛅 <u>Support</u>	Last Edit Date:	07-Jun-2004 03:28 PM		
🖲 🛅 Syndication	Start Date:	[None Specified]		
	End Date:	[None Specified]		

From either screen, if the user clicks on the task, the View tasks screen appears and you can perform all functions

### Assigning a Task from the View Content Screen

To assign a task from the view content page, follow these steps.

- Access the View Content page for the content block to which you want to "attach" in a task, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.
- 2. Click the Add Task button (
- 3. Follow the directions in "Creating a Task" on page 175. The only differences are
- the default "assigned to" user is All Authors of the content block. In other words, if you do not assign the task to a user or group, any user who edits this content block automatically becomes an "assigned to" user. The task appears on that user's "assigned to" task list.
- The content block's ID number and title appear on the Add task screen

### Viewing a Task from the View Content Screen

To view a task from the View Content screen, follow these steps.

**NOTE** After viewing a task, you can edit, delete or add comments to it.

- Access the View Content page for the content block to which you want to "attach" in a task, as described in "Viewing a Content Block" on page 31.
- 2. Click the View Task button (🖾).
- 3. Follow the directions in "Viewing a Task" on page 177.

### Task Module Toolbar

The following table explains the toolbar buttons available while managing tasks.

Button	Name	Description	More Information
<b>.</b>	Add Comment	Lets you add a comment to the task.	"Adding Comments to Tasks" on page 179

Button	Name	Description	More Information
3	Add Task	Access the Add Task screen from the View Content page.	"Attaching a Task to a Content Block" on page 183
¢	Add Task	Access Add Task screen from task module folder.	"Creating a Task" on page 175
←	Back	Returns to previous page.	
0	Calendar	Open a calendar to allow you to select a date.	
Ū	Delete Task	Deletes a task.	"Deleting A Task" on page 182
D	Edit Task	Allows you to edit a task.	"Editing a Task" on page 178
	Save	Save task information.	
	Update	Save task information.	
<u>s</u>	View Task	Views task information.	"Viewing a Task" on page 177

# Introduction to eWebeditPro+XML

**eWebeditPro+XML** is a browser-based, Web content editor designed for dynamic Web sites. It lets you create and publish your own Web content in any language supported by the operating system and your Web site.

More specifically, eWebeditPro+XML lets you perform Web page editing functions, such as

- copy content from any Windows-based application
- use Microsoft Word to edit Web content
- cut, copy, and paste
- find and replace text
- check spelling
- edit an image
- change font style, size, attributes (bold, italics, underline), and color
- begin lines with bullets or numbers
- adjust indentation
- right, center, or left justify text and images
- add a bookmark, hyperlink, image, or table
- view your text as WYSIWYG or HTML code
- insert or clean HTML code

You gain access to these functions either from the toolbar at the top of the editor window or from a menu that appears when you right click the mouse inside the editor.

## Using eWebeditPro+XML

eWebeditPro+XML is like many other word processing applications. You type text and then use toolbar buttons (illustrated below) and menu options to change the text's appearance or perform functions on it, such as spell checking.

🛛 🕹 🖻 🛍 🛱 🖊	🕰 🎒 🗠 🗠	🎨 🎂  🖊 🍓 🍓 🗕 🔜 🧮	👿 🕎 📴		▋▓▐▓▌▓▌▌
🛛 🛃 (Apply Style)	▼ Normal	▼ Times New Roman, 1 ▼ 3 (12 pt)	🕞 🗛 🍇 🗍	вицА	x <sup>2</sup>    nbsp © ⊗

### Organization of this Documentation

The next section, "Creating a Simple Web Page" on page 188, walks you through the steps required to create a simple Web page.

The following section, "Toolbar Buttons" on page 192, explains

- each toolbar button
- functions that appear when you right click the mouse

Many of these functions are simple and require only a brief explanation.

The last section, "Using eWebeditPro+XML's Advanced Features" on page 218, explains how to use the more advanced features.

# **Creating a Simple Web Page**

This section walks you through the process of creating a simple Web page, using only a few of the many features available. Later sections explain all of the features and how to use them.

### Your Finished Web Page

When you finish this exercise, your simple Web page will look like this.

🖁 🕹 🛍 🛱 🗛 🐴 🏉	◇ ◇   ♥ 🖦    🍓 🍓   ー 🔜 팩   📷 🔒 📴 📴   註 註 律 律   註 書 君 〓 😢
📗 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Norma	al 🔹 Times New Roman, 🔽 3 (12 pt) 🔹 🛕 🏝 🖪 🖌 🖳 A 📗 nbsp © © TM € j
This is some sample content also easily add <u>hyperlinks</u> .	You can make the text <b>bold</b> , <i>italic</i> , or <u>underlined</u> with the push of a button. You can
• You can begin a line Finally, you can change the	
	Notice that this page has the following elements.
	<ul> <li>The second sentence includes bold, italic and underlined text.</li> </ul>
	• The third sentence includes a <i>hyperlink</i> , text that will jump to another Web page when the user clicks on it.
	• The fourth sentence begins with a bullet.

• The last sentence has some very large (18 point) text.

### Creating the Sample Web Page

To create this page, follow these steps.

#### **Enter the First Two Sentences**

- Open eWebeditPro+XML. (Your Webmaster installs eWebeditPro+XML on your computer and determines which fonts and sizes are available. Your system may not match the example below.)
- 2. Type the first two sentences.

This is some sample content. You can make text bold, italic and underlined with the push of a button.

- Double click the word "bold" to select it. Then, click the Bold button (B) to apply bold to the word.
- 4. Double click the word "italic." Then, click the Italic button (*I*) to apply italic to the word.
- Double click the word "underlined." Then, click the underline button (<sup>1</sup>) to underline the word.

### **Creating a Hyperlink**

- 1. Type You can also easily add hyperlinks.
- 2. Double click the word hyperlinks so that it becomes selected.
- 3. Click the Hyperlink button ( ).
- 4. The hyperlink dialog box appears.

Hyperlink		×
Hyperlink Information		ОК
Тур <u>е</u> :	http:	
Link:	http://	Cancel
<u>B</u> ookmark:		
<u>T</u> ext:	content.	
Target <u>F</u> rame:	<b>_</b>	
Quick Link: (sele	ct link)	

- 5. In the Link field, after http://, enter www.ektron.com.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Notice that the word **hyperlink** now appears in a different color. When you save this Web page and a user views it, if the user clicks **hyperlink**, a new Web page will display Ektron's home page.

```
NOTE
```

If your computer has an internet connection, you can double click the hyperlink to test it.

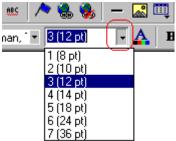
#### Applying a Bullet to a Line of Text

- 1. Press <Enter> to move the cursor down to the next line.
- 2. Type You can begin a line with bullets.
- 3. Click the bullet button  $(\Xi)$ .
- 4. Notice that the line is indented and now begins with a bullet.
  - You can begin a line with bullets.

#### Changing the Size of Text

- 1. Press <Enter> to move the cursor down to the next line.
- 2. Type Finally, you can change the font to a large size.
- 3. Select the words large size.

4. Click the down arrow to the right of the font size list. When you do, the list of available fonts appears.



5. Click 5 (18 pt).

6. Notice that large size is now much larger than the other text.

Congratulations! You have just created your first Web page with eWebeditPro+XML. You have learned how to apply bold, italic, and underlining, create a hyperlink, add a bullet to a line, and change the size of the text.

This sample used only a few of the many features available. The following sections explain the rest of the details about using the product.

# **Toolbar Buttons**

This section explains how to use the buttons and drop-down lists on the toolbar. (The toolbar is the row of buttons across the top of the editor window, illustrated below.)



The buttons let you perform functions such as cutting and pasting text, inserting images, and creating tables.

All buttons may not appear. Your Webmaster determines which buttons appear on your toolbar. Also, you can customize your toolbar so that it contains only the buttons you use (See "Customizing Your Toolbar" on page 207).

This section explains

- Selecting Text
- Applying Formatting Attributes to Text
- Table of Toolbar Buttons and Drop-Down Lists

## **Selecting Text**

You select text before performing an action on it, such as copying it.

- To select *all* information on a page, press Ctrl+A.
- To select a portion of the information on a page, you have two choices.
  - Hold down the left mouse button and drag the cursor across the data you want to select.
  - Hold down the Shift key and the right arrow key (
     until the desired data is selected.

• To select *a single word*, place the cursor on the word and double click the mouse.

Selected text has different background and foreground colors, as illustrated below.

Horizontal Alignment	Sets the horizontal position of the entire table.
Border Color	Sets the color of the table borders unless Use Default Color is checked

## **Applying Formatting Attributes to Text**

Several buttons apply formatting attributes to text, such as bold and italics. There are two ways to apply these attributes.

- Enter the text. Then, select the text and press the toolbar button. The button is now in a "pressed in" condition, and the text has the formatting attribute.
- Press the toolbar button. Then, begin typing the text. As you type, the formatting is applied.

To stop applying the formatting, press the button again. This action changes the button to a "pressed out" condition and terminates the formatting.

## Table of Toolbar Buttons and Drop-Down Lists

The following table explains each toolbar button and drop-down list.

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
န္က Cut	Ctrl+X	Remove selected text and graphics. Place that data into temporary memory, also known as the "clipboard." (If you later cut or copy more information onto the clipboard, the new information overwrites the original information.)	
В Сору	Ctrl+C	Copy selected text and graphics into temporary memory. Leave selected data where it is. (If you later cut or copy more information into memory, the original information is lost.)	"Copying from Other Applications" on page 219
Paste	Ctrl+V	Insert the most recently cut or copied text and graphics at the current cursor location.	
Paste Text		Paste the contents of the clipboard as plain text. That is, all HTML tags (including images) are not pasted. This button is helpful when you want to eliminate the HTML formatting of the text being copied.	
Replace		Launches the Search and Replace dialog box. The dialog searches for (and lets you optionally replace) text that you specify.	"Finding and Replacing Text" on page 220
Pind Next		Find next occurrence of the string entered into the Find What field of the Search and Replace dialog box.	"Finding and Replacing Text" on page 220
🖨 Print	Ctrl+P	Print the editor content.	
Mundo Vindo	Ctrl+Z	Reverse the most recent action, as if it never occurred. You can undo as many actions as you wish.	
Redo	Ctrl+Y	Reverse the undo action.	

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
Spell Check (manual)		Begin spell checker.	"Checking Spelling Upon Demand" on page 225
Spell Check (automatic)		Turn on or off spell check as-you-type feature.	"Checking Spelling as You Type" on page 224
Bookmark		Create a bookmark.	"Using Bookmarks" on page 333
link Edit Hyperlink		Change information about a hyperlink.	"Using Hyperlinks" on page 337
🕵 Remove Hyperlink		Remove a hyperlink.	"Removing a Hyperlink" on page 342
- Horizontal Line		Insert a horizontal line.	
Ricture		Insert a picture.	"Inserting Images" on page 232
2 Image Editor		Edit an image.	"Editing Images" on page 247
Table		Insert or edit a table.	"Introduction to Tables" on page 280
Edit in Microsoft Word		Edit content in Microsoft Word.	"Editing in Microsoft Word" on page 229
P Insert Comment		Insert a comment into the content (eWebEditPro+XML only)	"Entering Comments" on page 415
🗳 Upload Files		Upload any external files (such as images) to the server.	"Moving an Image to the Server" on page 245

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
Upload Content		Upload the content currently in the editor to the server.	"Content Upload" n the Developer's Reference Guide
🕺 Data Design Mode		Switches to Data Design Mode.	"Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode" on
		Button only appears when <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> configuration enables the Data Designer feature.	page 366
Z Data Design Mode		Switches to Data Entry Mode.	"Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode" on
		Button only appears when eWebeditPro+XML configuration enables the Data Designer feature.	page 366
View as WYSIWYG		Display the page content as WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get). WYSIWYG is the ability to see in the editor what will appear when user views the Web page.	
View as HTML		Display the page content as HTML.	"Viewing and Editing HTML" on page 343
E Number		<ul> <li>Begin the line on which the cursor rests with a number. If the line above this line is</li> <li>not numbered, assign this line 1</li> <li>numbered, assign a number one more than the line above</li> </ul>	
Bullet		Begin the line on which the cursor rests (or all selected lines) with a bullet (   ).	
Indent		Increase or decrease the current line's distance from the left margin.	

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
E E E E		<ul> <li>Align paragraph so that it is arranged</li> <li>evenly on the left side (uneven on the right) <ul> <li>in the center of each line</li> <li>evenly on the right side (uneven on the left)</li> </ul> </li> <li>evenly on right and left side</li> </ul>	
About eWebeditPro+XML		Display a dialog box that shows your version of eWebeditPro+XML and your license keys.	
Remove Style		Remove all style information applied to selected text. (You apply styles using the Style dropdown list.) For example Before <p class="note">This is initial content. </p> After <p>This is initial content.</p>	
Style (Apply Style)		Display a list of styles. Users can select from the list to apply a style to selected text. Note that the list can change depending on the formatting of the selected line. Your Webmaster determines which styles are available.	
Heading Size		Change the heading size. Your Webmaster determines which heading sizes are available.	

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
Times New Roman, 💌 Font Style		Change the font style. Your Webmaster determines which fonts are available.	
		Note: If more than one font appears in a selection, the browser on the reader's PC tries to display text using the first font. If the browser cannot find that font, it tries to use the second, etc.	
3 (12 pt) Font Size		Change the font size. Your Webmaster determines which font sizes are available.	
A Font Color		Change the font color.	
Background Color		Change the background color of the text.	
		Note: To remove background color from selected text, click the Normal button $(\mathbf{A})$ .	
B Bold	Ctrl+B	Make the text <b>bold</b> .	
I Italic	Ctrl+I	Make the text <i>italic</i> .	
Underline	Ctrl+U	Make the text <u>underlined</u> .	
A Normal		Remove all formatting from selected text.	
nbsp		Insert a blank space character. Although you can add spaces in the editor using the <space> bar on the keyboard, those spaces are ignored when the content appears by a browser.</space>	

Button	Equivalent Keystroke (Internet Explorer only)	Function	For more information, see
© Copyright		Insert copyright symbol.	
Registered Trademark		Insert registered trademark symbol.	
ТМ		Insert trademark symbol.	
Special Characters		Insert special characters (such as $\ {}^{f} \mu  {}^{\tilde{N}})$ from a drop down list. To view the list, click the black down arrow.	

The Data Designer feature also has a toolbar. For information, see "Using the Data Designer" on page 363.

### **Position Objects Options**

These buttons let you absolutely position elements (pictures, tables, etc.) anywhere on a page.

**WARNING!** Some older browsers (for example, Netscape 4) do not display absolutely positioned elements. Absolute position uses the style attribute. If you use this feature, the content is not compatible with all browsers.

Button	Function
Position	Lets you move selected table or image anywhere on the screen.
Lock	"Locks" selected table or image at its current screen position. Nothing can move a locked object. To move the object, unlock it by clicking this button again.
Nove to Front	If two or more images overlay each other, moves the selected image in front of the others.

Button	Function
🔁 Move to Back	If two or more images overlay each other, moves the selected image behind the others.
Move Forward	If two or more images overlay each other, moves the selected image one level closer to the front.
Move Backward	If two or more images overlay each other, moves the selected image one level closer to the back.
Above Text	If text overlays an image, move the image in front of the text.
Below Text	If an image overlays text, move the text in front of the image.

### **Text Direction Options**

The text direction menu options ( ) allow bidirectional editing of text, which is useful for Arabic, Farsi and Hebrew. The client computer must also support the language.

The text buttons determine the editing direction, while the edit buttons determine the side of the editor that displays the scroll bar.

For right-to left languages, such as Arabic, Farsi and Hebrew, the text editing would be "right to left", and the scroll bar would be on the left side.

For western European languages, the text editing would be "left to right", and the scroll bar would be on the right side.

Button	Function
Left-Right Text	Text is entered left to right.
Right-Left Text	Text is entered right to left.

Button	Function
al Left-Right Edit	The vertical scroll bar appears on the right side of the window.
Ia Right-Left Edit	The vertical scroll bar appears on the left side of the window.

### Form Elements Toolbar



This toolbar lets you insert the elements of an HTML form into the editor. You begin by clicking the Forms button (<sup>C)</sup>). Next, add the fields and buttons that make up your form. The buttons are described in "Buttons of the Form Elements Toolbar" on page 202.

**NOTE** This documentation does not explain how to create HTML forms. Many books and Web sites are dedicated to this subject, such as http://www.w3schools.com/html/ html\_forms.asp.

#### Updating Form or Element Information

If you want change a form or an element, click the form or element within the editor then click the element's toolbar button. For example, to update the textarea field in the illustration below, click the field then click the text area button (circled in red below).

X 🗈 🛍 🛱 👭 🐴 🎒 🗠 ભ 🖤 😬 🥕 🍓 🍓
📗 🛃 (Apply Style) 💌 Normal 🗾 🔨 Times New Roman.
📙 🖏 🖪 🗷 R   ab (ab) 💷 Textarea button 😰
form Sample text Textarea field Submit

When you do, a dialog appears with the element's information. Update as needed.

#### **Replacing Form or Element Information**

To replace a form element with another, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the element to be replaced.
- 2. Click the new element's toolbar button.
- 3. Complete the dialog that appears.

When you close the dialog, the new element and its information replace the old element.

### **Buttons of the Form Elements Toolbar**

Button	Function
<b>F</b> orm	Inserts opening and closing form tags. For example: <form action="http://localhost/ewebeditpro4/&lt;br&gt;formtest.htm" method="post" name="Test"> </form> When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the form: • Name • Action page • Method • Encode Type
<b>B</b> Button	<pre>Inserts a button. For example:</pre>

Button	Function
Submit button	Inserts a submit button. For example:
	<input type="submit" value="Submit"/>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the submit button:
	Button caption
P	Inserts a reset button. For example:
Reset button	<input type="reset" value="Reset Page"/>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the reset button:
	Button caption
ab	Inserts a hidden text field. For example:
Hidden text field	<input <br="" type="hidden" value="This is initial content"/> name="mycontent" />
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the hidden text field:
	Name
	• Value
Text field	Inserts a text field. For example:
	<input name="mycontent" size="15" value="This is initial content"/>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the text field:
	Name
	Value
	• Size (the number of characters in the field. If a user's entry exceeds the size, the field scrolls to the right.)

Button	Function
Password	<pre>Inserts a password field. For example: <input name="mypassword" type="password" value=""/></pre>
	A password differs from a free text field in that the user entry appears as asterisks (*), <i>not</i> to the actual characters. This is done to prevent an onlooker from seeing the password.
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the password field:
	Name
	Value
	• Size (the number of characters in the field. If a user's entry exceeds the size, the field scrolls to the right.)
Textarea field	<pre>Inserts a textarea field. For example:     <textarea cols="40" name="mycontent" rows="5">This is initial     content</textarea></pre>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the textarea field:
	Name
	Value
	Columns
	• Rows
Radio button	Inserts a radio button. For example: <input checked="checked" name="mybutton" type="radio"/> When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following
	information for the textarea field:
	Name
	Value
	Default is Checked

Button	Function
Check box	Inserts a check box. For example:
	<pre><input checked="checked" name="mycheckbox" type="checkbox"/></pre>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the check box:
	Name
	Value
	Default is Checked
Select box	Inserts a selection box. For example:
Select box	<pre><select multiple="multiple" name="myselectbox" size="25"> <option value="option1">option1</option> <option value="option2">option2</option> </select></pre>
	When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the select box:
	Name
	• Size (the number of characters in the field. If a user's entry exceeds the size, the field scrolls to the right.)
	<ul> <li>Allow multiple (determines if a user responding to this selection box can choose more than one option)</li> </ul>
	Option name (the internal value assigned to this option)
	• Display name (the user sees this text in the selection box)
	This dialog also has three buttons, described below.
	Add - lets you add a new option to the selection box
	Change -lets you change the selected option's option name or display name
	<b>Delete -</b> removes option from selection list Note that you can place a check mark next to an option to specify that option as a default value on the form.
	Display Name     high school       Add     Change     Del       [inigh school] high school     [inigh school] high school       [college] college
	If you place a check mark next to an option, the user only needs to press <tab> to select the option, as opposed to placing the cursor next to the option and clicking the mouse.</tab>

Button	Function
File Upload	Inserts a File Upload field and a Browse button. For example: <input name="Save" size="10" type="file"/> When you click this button, a dialog box prompts you to enter the following information for the File Upload:
	<ul> <li>Name</li> <li>Size (the number of characters in the field. If a user's entry exceeds the size, the field scrolls to the right.)</li> </ul>

## **Customizing Your Toolbar**

The eWebeditPro+XML toolbar consists of one or more *menus*. Each menu has one or more buttons.

You can recognize the beginning of a menu by the double vertical bars (circled in the illustration).



This sample toolbar has four menus.

Your Webmaster determines

- which menus are available to you
- which buttons appear on each menu, and the sequence in which they appear initially
- whether or not you are authorized to customize your toolbar. If you are not authorized, your edits are not saved when you leave the eWebeditPro+XML screen.

If you are authorized to customize your toolbar, there are six ways to do so. You can

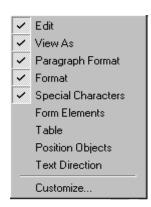
- remove or add available menus
- remove or add toolbar buttons
- rearrange menus on a toolbar
- create a new menu
- move a menu off the toolbar
- rearrange the buttons on a menu

Each procedure is explained below.

## **Removing Or Adding Menus**

To remove or add a menu, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor on the toolbar.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. A dropdown list appears. It displays all menus available to you and the **Customize** option.



## **NOTE** If **Customize** does not appear on the menu, you are not authorized to customize the toolbar.

Menus that are checked appear on your toolbar.

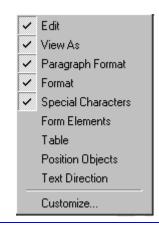
In the above example, the **Special Characters**, **View As**, **Format**, and **Paragraph Format** menus appear. The **Table**, **Position Objects** and **Text Directions** menus, which are not checked, are available but do not currently appear on the toolbar.

4. To *add* a menu to your toolbar that appears on the list but is not currently checked, place the cursor on the menu name and click the mouse. A check mark appears, and the menu appears on the toolbar.

To *remove* a menu from your toolbar, place the cursor on the menu name and click the mouse. The check mark disappears, and the menu no longer appears on the toolbar.

## **Removing or Adding Menu Items**

- 1. Place the cursor on the toolbar.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. A dropdown list appears. Click **Customize**.



- **NOTE** If **Customize** does not appear on the menu, you are not authorized to customize the toolbar.
  - 4. The Toolbar Customization dialog box appears.

oolbar Customization	x
Toolbars Commands Toolbars VEdit View As	New
Paragraph Format     Format     Special Characters     Form Elements     Table	Delete <u>R</u> eset All
Table     Position Objects     Text Direction	
	Close

- 5. Click the menu that you want to edit.
- 6. Click the **Commands** tab. A new screen appears.

Toolbar Customization	×
Ioolbars       Commands         Toolbar:       Edit         X       Cut         Copy       Paste         Paste       Paste         Paste       Paste         Paste       Paste         Paste       Paste         Paste       Paste         Paste       Pint	All Commands  All Commands  All Commands  Bullets (Bulleted List)  Bullets (Bulleted List)  Center (Align Center)  Center (Align Center)  Check Spelling  Move Up  Checkbox
Bar Undo Selected Toolbar Edit	Move Down

#### Using the Customize Toolbar Dialog Box

The left half of the **Commands** screen lists the buttons in the sequence in which they appear on the menu.

The right half of the screen lists available buttons that do not currently appear on the menu.

To *add* a button to the toolbar, drag it from the right side of the screen to the location on the left side where you want it to appear. (You can also click a button then click **<--Add**. This action places the button at the bottom of the list.)

To *remove* a button from the toolbar, drag it from the left side of the screen to the right. (You can also click a button then click **Remove-**->.)

The **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons let you to move any button up or down one slot within the list of buttons.

#### Rearranging the Items on a Menu

1. Click the button you want to move

 Click Move Up and Move Down to move the button up or down one slot for each click.

## **Restoring Toolbars**

If you remove all toolbars from your menu, and then want to restore the menus but do not have the **Customize** menu option, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the editor.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. A menu appears with a **Redisplay toolbars** option.
- 4. Click this option to restore all menus.

#### Rearranging the Menus on a Toolbar

To move a menu to a different toolbar location, follow these steps.

1. Place the cursor on the double vertical bars that indicate the

beginning of the menu. 🕕 陆 🛍 👫

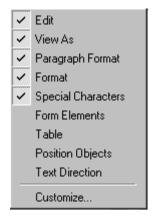
- 2. Click the mouse.
- 3. Hold down the mouse button and drag the menu to the new location. You can move the menu anywhere else on the toolbar.

Note that your Webmaster can define a menu so that it cannot reside on the same row with another menu. If you move such a menu, it will not remain on a row with another menu. Instead, it will move down to the next row.

4. After you place the menu where you want it, release the mouse button.

## Creating a New Menu

- 1. Place the cursor on the toolbar.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. A dropdown list appears. Click Customize.



4. The Toolbar Customization dialog box appears.

Toolbar Customization	×
Toolbars Commands	
Toolbars         ✓ Edit         ✓ View As         ✓ Paragraph Format         ✓ Format         ✓ Special Characters         Form Elements         Table         Position Objects         Text Direction	<u>N</u> ew Delete <u>R</u> eset All
	Close

- 5. Click New.
- A new menu appears on the left side of the window, above the existing menus. The default name of the new menu is Custom 0.



7. To rename the menu, place the cursor in the field that displays the new menu and enter the new name.

**NOTE** If you click outside the toolbar name field, you cannot later change the menu's name.

- 8. To have the menu appear on your toolbar, click in the small box to the left of the menu name.
- 9. Click the **Commands** tab.
- 10. Add buttons to the menu, following the procedure described in "Using the Customize Toolbar Dialog Box" on page 210.

### Moving a Menu Off the Toolbar

You can move a menu from the toolbar to anywhere else on the screen, even if eWebeditPro+XML does not occupy the entire screen.

You can also change the orientation of a menu that is not on the toolbar from a horizontal to vertical.

To move a menu, follow these steps.

1. Place the cursor on the double vertical bars that indicate the

beginning of the menu.

- 2. Click the mouse.
- 3. Hold down the mouse button and drag the menu to the new location. You can move the menu anywhere on the screen.
- 4. After you place the menu where you want it, release the mouse button.

#### Changing the Menu's Orientation

To change the menu's orientation, follow these steps.

- 1. Drag the menu from the toolbar.
- 2. Move the cursor to the bottom of the menu until it becomes a double-headed arrow (illustrated below).



3. Drag the cursor to the lower left. As you do, the menu's orientation changes from horizontal to vertical (illustrated below).



## The Context Sensitive Menu

This section explains the functions available on the menu that appears when you right click the mouse within the eWebeditPro+XML editor. You can also access this menu by

pressing the application key ( $\blacksquare$ ).

Because this menu can change depending on what you are doing, it is called a *context-sensitive* menu.



**NOTE** A different context-sensitive menu is available when your cursor is within a table. That menu is described in "The Table Context Sensitive Menu" on page 290.

The following table lists the menu options and where to get more information on each.

Menu Option	Lets you	For more information, see
Menus	View all toolbar menus.	"Using eWebeditPro+XML without a Mouse" on page 348
Cut	Remove selected text and graphics. Place that data into temporary memory. If you later cut or copy more information into memory, the information in memory is lost.	
Сору	Copy selected text and graphics into temporary memory. Leave selected data where it is. (If you later cut or copy more information into memory, the original information is lost.)	"Copying from Other Applications" on page 219
Paste	Insert the most recently cut or copied text and graphics at the current cursor location.	
Paste Text	Paste the contents of the clipboard as plain text. That is, all HTML tags (including images) are not pasted. This button is helpful when you want to eliminate the HTML formatting of the text being copied.	
Select All	Select all information on your page. After you select it, you can cut it, copy it, etc.	
Clean HTML	Remove unnecessary HTML tags	"Cleaning HTML" on page 345
Hyperlink	Create a link to another Web page or a spot within the current page	"Using Hyperlinks" on page 337
Edit HTML	Edit your page's HTML	"Editing a Section of a Page" on page 344
Insert HTML	Insert HTML onto the page at the cursor location.	"Inserting HTML" on page 344

Menu Option	Lets you	For more information, see
Check Spelling	Compare words in the editor to Microsoft WORD spelling list.	"Checking Spelling" on page 224
View as WYSIWYG/HTML	View and edit your page's HTML	"Viewing and Editing HTML" on page 343
Picture	Insert a picture	"Inserting Images" on page 232
These options only appear if your site is using <b>eWebEditPro+XML</b> : Insert Custom tag, <i>tag name</i> tag Attributes, <i>tag name</i> tag Properties	Work with XML tags	"Editing XML Web Pages" on page 354 only available in the <b>eWebEditPro+XML</b> User Guide

## Using eWebeditPro+XML's Advanced Features

Most of eWebeditPro+XML's features are easy to learn. For example, to make your text bold, you select the text, and click the bold button (**B**).

However, some of eWebeditPro+XML's features are more complex. For example, when creating a table, you must make several decisions: the number of rows and columns, the size of the border, the spacing between cells, etc.

## Copying from Other Applications

You can copy information from most other Windows applications into eWebeditPro+XML and retain the formatting from the original application. In general, copying from another application involves these steps.

- 1. Sign on to the application in which the information resides.
- 2. Select the information to be copied.
- 3. Press <Ctrl>+<C>.
- 4. Go to eWebeditPro+XML.
- 5. Press <Ctrl>+<V> to paste the selected information.

Note that you can only copy content, not background information that generates content.

So, for example, you can copy the values in a spreadsheet but not the formulas used to generate those values. Also, copying dynamic fields from Microsoft WORD would retrieve the current value of the fields but not the variables that generate those values.

It's a good idea to experiment with copying from different sources to test the results.

## **Finding and Replacing Text**

To find (and optionally replace) text on your Web page, click the Replace button (). When you do, the Find and Replace dialog box appears.

Find And Replace			×
Find What:	initial	•	<u>F</u> ind Next
R <u>e</u> place With:		•	
Match <u>w</u> hole w	ord only		<u>R</u> eplace
Match <u>c</u> ase			Replace <u>A</u> ll
Direction			
© <u>U</u> р	⊙ <u>D</u> own		Cancel

You can use this dialog box to simply find text, or to find text and replace it with other text. Each option is explained below.

**NOTE** You can also use this dialog to delete text that appears repeatedly. To do so, follow the directions in "Finding and Replacing Text" on page 220 and enter nothing in the **Replace With** field.

### **Finding Text**

- 1. In the **Find What** field, type the text that you want to find in the content.
- 2. Set dialog box options (see "Additional Options on the Dialog Box" on page 221).
- Click Find Next to find the next occurrence of the "find" text.

## Finding and Replacing Text

1. In the **Find What** field, type the text that you want to find.

- In the **Replace With** field, type the text to replace the "find" text.
- 3. Set dialog box options (see "Additional Options on the Dialog Box" on page 221).
- 4. If you want to
  - replace all occurrences of the "find" text with the "replace" text, click **Replace All**.

**NOTE** You can undo replacements one at a time using the Undo button (<sup>ICD</sup>).

- replace only the highlighted term with the "replace" text, click **Replace**.
- find the next occurrence of the "find" text (and optionally replace it with the "replace" text), click **Find Next**.
- change the highlighted term using the editor, exit the Find and Replace dialog, move to the term and edit as needed.

To restart the search, press the Find Next button (1).

5. Continue to find and optionally replace or edit until you reach the end of the text.

## Additional Options on the Dialog Box

The dialog box also lets you specify

- a search direction
- if the search considers the case (upper or lower) of the search term
- whole word match

#### **Specifying a Search Direction**

The search begins where the cursor is when you click **Find Next**. To make sure you locate every occurrence of a term, place the cursor at the top of the content before beginning the search.

If you begin the search from somewhere other than the top of the page, use the **Direction** field to search from the current location to the top or bottom of the file.

Find And Replace	×
Find What:	<u>F</u> ind Next
Replace With:	
Match whole word only	<u>R</u> eplace
Direction	Replace <u>A</u> ll
C <u>U</u> p ⊙ <u>D</u> own	Cancel

To search from the cursor location to the	Click this option in the Direction field
end of the page	Down
top of the page	Up

#### Considering the Case of a Search Term

By default, the search ignores the case (upper or lower) of a search term. In other words, if you enter **Bob** in the **Find What** field, the search finds bob, Bob, BOB, etc.

If you want the search to be case sensitive, use the **Match case** check box on the Find window. If you enter **Bob** in the **Find What** field and place a check in the **Match case** box, the search only stops at Bob, not bob or BOB.

Find What:     Initia     Eind I       Replace With:     Image: Second Secon	Next
Bool	
Match whole word only	lace
Match <u>case</u> Replan	ce <u>A</u> ll
C Up O Down Can	ncel

#### Whole Word Match

By default, the search finds any occurrence of the text that you type into the **Find what** field. For example, if you enter **the**, the search finds the word **the**, as well as those letters embedded in other words, such as o**the**rs and **the**ater.

If you want the search to find only whole word occurrences of the text you type into the **Find what** field, click the **Match whole** words only box in the Find dialog box.

Find And Replace	×
Find What:	<u>F</u> ind Next
Replace With:	
Match whole word only	<u>R</u> eplace
Match <u>c</u> ase     Direction	Replace <u>A</u> ll
C <u>U</u> p C <u>D</u> own	Cancel

# **Checking Spelling**

The **eWebeditPro+XML** editor can check your spelling as you type or whenever you want to check it. The rest of this section explains

- Disabling Script Blocking
- Check Spelling as You Type
- Checking Spelling Upon Demand
- Spell Checking Selected Text
- Setting Spell Check Options

## **Disabling Script Blocking**

If Norton Antivirus <sup>™</sup> 2001 is installed on your computer, you need to disable script blocking in order to use the spell checker. If you do not disable script blocking, an error message will appear whenever you check spelling.

To do this, follow these steps.

- 1. Launch Norton Antivirus <sup>™</sup> 2001.
- 2. From the first window, click **Options**.
- 3. On the next window, click Script Blocking.
- 4. On the script blocking window, uncheck **Enable Script Blocking**.
- 5. Press OK.

## Checking Spelling as You Type

You can have the editor check spelling as you type. To turn on the spell-check-as-you-type feature, click the automatic spell check button (<sup>115</sup>).

When you click the button, the spell checker reviews every word in the file. A wavy red line ( ..... ) appears under any word whose spelling is not found in the system's dictionary.

The spell checker continues to review each word as you type it, marking any words not in the dictionary.

**NOTE** Depending on the speed of your computer, there may be a short delay between the time you type an incorrect word and when the wavy red line appears. Also, the spell check does not check a word until you enter a space character after the word.

#### **Fixing Spelling Errors**

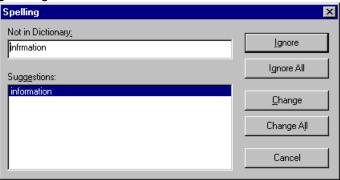
There are two ways to fix a spelling error (indicated by a wavy red line).

- Click the misspelled word and then right click. A menu displays words that are similar to the misspelled word. Click the correct word.
- If you know the correct spelling, type the correction.

### **Checking Spelling Upon Demand**

If you do not want to use the spell-check-as-you-type feature, you can begin spell checking whenever you wish. To do this, click the spell check button (\$).

When you do, the system checks each word in the file. If the spell check finds a word in none of the dictionaries, it displays the Spelling dialog box.



#### The Spelling Dialog Box

The Spelling dialog box displays

- the word not in the dictionary (in the Not in Dictionary field).
- suggested spellings for the word (in the Suggestions field). The most likely replacement is selected at the top of the list.
- buttons that let you ignore the word, change the word, or exit.

If you want to	Do this	
Replace the word with one of the suggestions and continue spell checking the page.	<ol> <li>Click the suggested word.</li> <li>Click Change.</li> </ol>	
Replace <i>every occurrence</i> of the word with one of the suggestions and continue spell checking the page.	<ol> <li>Click the suggested word.</li> <li>Click Change All.</li> </ol>	
Correct the spelling of the word by typing it and continue spell checking the page.	<ol> <li>Click in the Not In Dictionary field.</li> <li>Correct the spelling.</li> <li>Click Change.</li> </ol>	
Leave the word as is; continue spell checking the page. You would normally do this if a word (such as a company name) is spelled correctly even though it is not in the dictionary.	Click <b>Ignore</b> .	
Leave the word as is; continue spell checking the page, ignoring all other occurrences of the word.	Click Ignore All.	
Stop spell checking.	Click Cancel.	

#### **Spell Checking Selected Text**

To check the spelling for a single word or a group of words, follow these steps.

- 1. Select the text that you want to spell check.
- 2. Press the manual spell check button (\$).

- The spell checker reviews the words in the selected text and stops at any word not in the dictionary. For documentation of options when a misspelled word is found, see "The Spelling Dialog Box" on page 226.
- 4. When the spell checker finishes reviewing the words in the selected text, it displays the following message Finished checking selection. Do you want to check the rest of the document?

Click **Yes** to spell check the rest of the document (including text above the selected text).

Click **No** to stop the spell checker.

## Setting Spell Check Options

**eWebeditPro+XML** can use Microsoft Word's spell checking feature (your Webmaster makes this decision).

If your installation uses Word, Word's Spelling & Grammar window (available from the **Tools - > Options** menu) has settings that affect the operation of the spell check.

Options	? ×
Track Changes         User Information         Co           View         General         Edit         Print	ompatibility File Locations Save Spelling & Grammar
Spelling Check spelling as you type Hide spelling errors in this document Always suggest corrections Suggest from main dictionary only Ignore words in UPPERCASE Ignore words with numbers Ignore Internet and file addresses Custom dictionary:	
CUSTOM.DIC <u>Dictionaries</u> Grammar	
<ul> <li>Check grammar as you type</li> <li>Hide grammatical errors in this document</li> <li>Check grammar with spelling</li> <li>Show readability statistics</li> </ul>	Writing style: Technical
Recheck_Document	OK Cancel

Specifically, you can set the spell check feature to check or ignore

- words in UPPERCASE (for example, XYLOGIC)
- words with numbers (for example, mp3)
- Internet and file addresses (for example, http://www.ektron.com/)

As an example, if you check the box to the left of **Ignore Words in UPPERCASE**, **eWebeditPro+XML**'s spell check does not consider words in all uppercase characters.

You also use the custom dictionary section of the screen to identify custom dictionaries for the spell check to reference.

The spell check feature does not use the other fields on this screen.

## **Editing in Microsoft Word**

If your computer has Microsoft Word 2000 or greater, you can edit content within Word. You may prefer to do this because of familiarity with Word's user interface, and to use additional functionality available in Word.

**NOTE** Some Word formatting may not be compatible with HTML and, as a result, not be transferred to eWebeditPro+XML.

To edit with Word, follow these steps.

- 1. Open eWebeditPro+XML.
- 2. Press the Word toolbar button (1).
- The following dialog may appear, warning you that some Word formatting may not be transferred back to eWebeditPro+XML. Press Yes if you still want to edit in Word.

🖪 Edit ir	word	×
?		about to edit your document in MS Word. Due to the limitations of HTML, there may be a loss of formatting turning the document to the editor.
	Do you	wish to proceed?
		<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o
	4.	Microsoft Word opens. Any content that was in <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> when you pressed the Word button is copied to Word.

- 5. Edit content as desired.
- 6. Press File -> Close.
- Another warning like the one in Step 3 may appear. Press Yes to copy the edited content back to eWebeditPro+XML.
- 8. When done, return to **eWebeditPro+XML** and press the Word toolbar button again.

 If you change your mind and decide to restore the content to the way it was before you edited it in Word, press the undo button (<sup>N</sup>).

If you want to restore the Word changes after pressing Undo, press the redo button (<sup>CC</sup>).

## Uploading an Image in a Microsoft Word Document

If you insert an image into the Word content and then paste that content or save it, the following dialog box appears. The box lists all images in the content and asks if you want to copy them from your computer to your organization's Web server.



If you are ready to publish your Web content and want to display the image, click **Update Now**. If you plan to add more content later, you can click **Upload Later** and upload all images at that time.

## Editing XML Documents

If your organization has implemented **eWebEditPro+XML**, you cannot edit XML documents using Microsoft Word. This is because Word does not support XML editing. If a full XML document is

loaded, the Word button (1997) is disabled.

If a Word document includes *some* custom/XML tags, the following dialog appears, warning you about the problem.

🐮 🖪 E dit in \	∀ord	×
		at Microsoft Word may not recognize. troduce invalid tags, or may not display it at all.
Do you wa	ant to continue?	
	Yes	<u>N</u> o

You can proceed and edit using Word or decide not to edit using Word.

## **Inserting Images**

To insert a picture into the editor, place the cursor where you want the image to appear and click the Insert Picture button

(🔊). When you click the button, one of the two Picture Properties dialog boxes illustrated below appears, depending on how your Webmaster has set up your system.

The dialog boxes are very similar, with the only difference being that the **Select Server File** button only appears on the second dialog box.

edia File Selection				
File Selection				OK
ļ				Cancel
Resolve Image Paths			Select <u>N</u> ew File	<u>O</u> ptions
Layout		- Picture -		
<u>W</u> idth:				
<u>H</u> eight:				
<u>B</u> order Thickness:	0			
Alignment:	•			
	<u>R</u> eset			
Maintain Aspect Ratio				
Spacing				
H <u>o</u> rizontal:	0			
	0			

edia File Selection	
- <u>F</u> ile Selection	OK
	Cancel
Images: Select <u>S</u> erver File Select <u>N</u> ew File	<u>O</u> ptions
Layout Picture	
Width:	
Height:	
Border Thickness: 0	
Alignment:	
<u>R</u> eset	
✓ Maintain Aspect Ratio	
Spacing	
H <u>o</u> rizontal:	
Vertical: 0	
jitle:	

You can also access this dialog box to modify a picture after you insert it. To do this, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the picture.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Picture from the menu.

If you see the first dialog box, proceed to "Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box" on page 233. If you see the second dialog box, proceed to "Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box" on page 237.

### Using the First Picture Properties Dialog Box

When the first Picture Properties dialog box appears, click the **Select New File** button. When you do, the Insert Media Item dialog box appears.

This box and lets you insert a picture from your computer (and any network folder available to your computer), or from the Web server

to which your computer is connected. Both choices are described below.

🗿 Insert Media Item - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 🗙		
To Select an Existing File:	File Information:	
	Not Available	
Delete	Preview	
To Select a Local File:		
Browse		
Enter a description for the file.		
	OK Cancel	

#### Inserting a Picture from the Server

The top left corner of the dialog box (Illustrated below) lists the pictures on the Web server.

🛃 Insert Media Item - Microsof		
To Select a	n Existing File:	
camera choice Mail		
	Delete	

Pictures that you previously inserted appear on this list, as do pictures inserted by other users connected to that server.

To insert a picture from the server, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the picture from the **To Select an Existing File** field that you want to insert.
- 2. Information about the picture's file size, width and height appears in the upper right corner of the dialog box.
- 3. If you want to view a picture before inserting it, click **Preview** (on the right side of the dialog box).
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. The Picture Properties dialog box reappears. Here, you can change the properties of the picture. For more information, see
  - "Adjusting a Picture" on page 238
  - "Setting a Border" on page 240
  - "Aligning the Picture" on page 241
  - "Adding Space around the Picture" on page 243
- 6. Click **OK** to insert the picture into the editor.

#### Deleting a Picture from the Server

To delete a picture from the server, select the picture and click the **Delete** button.

#### Inserting a Picture from Your Computer

Use the lower left corner of the dialog box to insert pictures from your computer (and any network folder available to your computer) into the editor.

To Select a Local File:			
	Browse		
Enter a description for	the file.		

**NOTE** You can only select files in the **To Select a Local File:** field if your computer has permission to upload files to the server.

To insert a picture from your computer, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the **Browse** button.
- Navigate to the file that you want to insert and press **Open** to insert it.

Your Webmaster can set a maximum size (in kilobytes) for images. If you select an image that exceeds the maximum, an error message appears and you cannot insert it.

Your Webmaster can also restrict the type of image file you can insert. For example, if your Webmaster does not authorize you to insert bitmap (.bmp) files and you try to do so, an error message lists valid file extensions, and you cannot insert the image.



- 3. Click in the **Enter a description for the file** field. Enter a title to describe the file.
- After you insert the picture, the title appears in the dialog box's top left corner to identify the picture to you and all users connected to the same Web server.

**NOTE** The title is also the alt text for the image. The alt text appears in place of the image on the Web page if the image itself cannot display for any reason.

- 5. Information about the picture's file size, width and height appears in the upper right corner of the dialog box.
- If you want to view a picture before inserting it, click **Preview** (on the right side of the dialog box).
- 7. Click **OK**.
- 8. The Picture Properties dialog box reappears. Here, you can change the picture's properties. For more information, see
  - "Adjusting a Picture" on page 238
  - "Setting a Border" on page 240
  - "Aligning the Picture" on page 241
  - "Adding Space around the Picture" on page 243
  - "Editing the Picture's Title" on page 244
- 9. Click **OK** to insert the picture into the editor.

## Using the Second Media Selection Dialog Box

When using the second Media Selection dialog box, you can insert a picture from any folder available to your computer (whether the folder is on your computer or a remote computer) or from the Web server. Your Webmaster determines which pictures are available on the Web server.

To insert a picture from

- a folder available to your computer, click **Select New File**, navigate to the file of interest, and click **OK**.
- the Web server, click the **Select Server File** button. You are prompted to enter a **User Name** and **Password**. Your Webmaster assigns these codes to you, which are needed to copy the file to the Web server.

Next, the Image Explorer dialog appears (illustrated below). Navigate through the folder structure until you find the image. Then click **OK** to insert the image into **eWebeditPro+XML**.

Image Explorer	×
Picture Picture Indee	Ā
	7
Select: folder3/index-simlie.jpg	
<u> </u>	

#### The Picture Properties Dialog Box

You can also use the Picture Properties dialog box to

- adjust the picture's width, height, border thickness, and alignment
- reset the image's properties width, height, border thickness, and alignment to their original specifications
- set spacing between the picture and surrounding information on the page
- enter or edit the picture's title
- view technical information about your connection

#### **Adjusting a Picture**

The layout area of the Picture Properties dialog box lets you adjust a picture's width, height, border thickness, and alignment.

Layout	
<u>₩</u> idth:	16
<u>H</u> eight:	16
Border Thickness:	0
<u>A</u> lignment:	Not set 💌
	Reset

You can use the following fields to adjust the picture before inserting it into the editor.

To make this change	Use this field
The width of the picture, in pixels	Width
The height of the picture, in pixels	Height
Add a border around the picture	Border Thickness For more information, see "Setting a Border" on page 240
Adjust the alignment of the picture	Alignment For more information, see "Aligning the Picture" on page 241

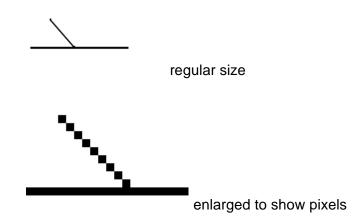
**WARNING!** If you substantially adjust the picture's height and/or width, the picture may be distorted when users view your Web page.

#### **Pixels**

A pixel is a single point in a graphic image.

Computer monitors display pictures by dividing the screen into thousands of pixels, arranged in rows and columns. The pixels are so close together that they appear connected.

Below is an image shown at regular size and then enlarged so you can see the pixels that make up the picture.



#### **Setting a Border**

To add a border around a picture, enter the border's thickness in pixels in the **Border Thickness** field on the Picture Properties dialog box.

Layout	
<u>₩</u> idth:	16
<u>H</u> eight:	16
Border Thickness:	D
<u>Alignment:</u>	Not set
	Reset

Here is a picture with a 1 pixel border.



Here is the same picture with a 10 pixel border.

If the picture is not a hyperlink, its border is black. If the picture is also a hyperlink, the border is the same color as a hyperlink (for example, blue or purple if visited).

#### **Aligning the Picture**

To align a picture, use the **Alignment** field on the Picture Properties dialog box.

Layout	
Width:	16
<u>H</u> eight:	16
Border Thickness:	0
Alignment:	Not set)
	Reset

When deciding how to align a picture, you need to become familiar with these terms.

- baseline of text the imaginary line on which the text lies.
   Some letters (such as g, p and y) have descenders, segments of letters that extend below the baseline
- *bottom* of text the lowest section of a line to which a descender extends
- *top* of text the highest spot of a line to which any segment of a letter extends
- *vertical center* the midpoint between the top and bottom of the line



The following table lists your alignment choices.

To align	Click this in the Alignment field	Illustration
The picture on the left margin, allowing subsequent text to wrap around it	Left	left
The picture on the right margin, allowing subsequent text to wrap around it	Right	right 😥
The top of the picture with the top of the text	Text Top, Top	texttop
The vertical center of the picture with the <i>baseline</i> of the text	Middle	middle middle
The vertical center of the picture with the <i>vertical center</i> of the text	AbsMiddle	absmiddle
The bottom of the picture with the <i>baseline</i> of the text (This is the default alignment)	Bottom, Baseline	bottom
The bottom of the picture with the <i>bottom</i> of the text	AbsBottom	absbottom

### Resetting Width, Height, Border Thickness, and Alignment

If you adjust the picture's width, height, border thickness, and/or alignment and later want to restore *all* of those settings to their original values, click the **Reset** button.

- Layout		
Width:	20	
<u>H</u> eight:	20	
Border Thickness:	0	
<u>A</u> lignment:	Not set	•
	Reset	

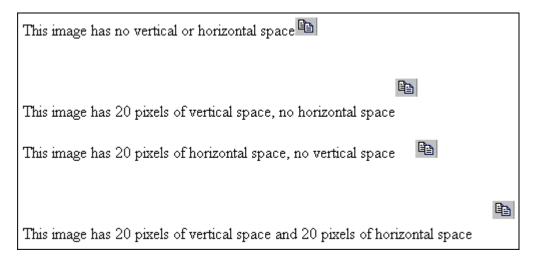
Note that you cannot selectively restore some settings -- the **Reset** button automatically restores all of them.

#### Adding Space around the Picture

On the Picture Properties dialog box, you can use the **Spacing** fields (**Horizontal** and **Vertical**) to add space around the picture. You enter a number of pixels to determine spacing value.

Spacing	
H <u>o</u> rizontal:	0
⊻ertical:	0

The following graphic illustrates the effect of adding spacing to a picture.



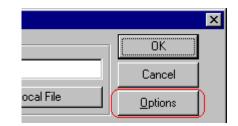
### **Editing the Picture's Title**

The title that you entered in the Insert Media Item dialog box defaults into the **Title** field of the Media Selection dialog box. You can edit the title in this field if desired.

**NOTE** The title is also the alt text for the image. The alt text appears in place of the image on the Web page if the image itself cannot display for any reason.

#### **The Options Button**

When you click the **Options** button on the File Properties dialog box, the options dialog box appears. The box displays information about your connection to the Web server.



For information about these settings, see "Uploading Images" in the eWebeditPro+XML Developer's Reference Guide.

# Moving an Image to the Server

If you insert an image from your computer into **eWebeditPro+XML** content, that image must be moved to the server when you save the content. The image can only appear on Web pages that display it after you move it to the server.

When you save content that incudes an image you inserted, the following dialog appears.

Files Waiting for Upload	×
Files for Upload	Upload Now
wvnet 13 KB	Upload Later
	Cancel
	- Preview
Estimated Upload Time: 00:00:05	
Title	

All inserted files appear in the dialog, which also estimates how long it will take to move the files to your server. If you do not want to wait that long to upload the files, click **Upload Later**. If you do this, the images will not appear on the published Web content until you move them to the server.

You can also enter a **Title** for the image near the bottom of the screen. If you do, this text appears when the user reading the Web pages moves the cursor over the image.

# **Deleting a Picture**

If you want to delete a picture, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor over the picture.
- 2. Click the mouse to select the picture.
- 3. Click the Cut button ( $\mathbb{K}$ ).

# **Editing Images**

WebImageFX lets you select an image from the content, edit that image, and then insert the updated image into the content. Editing consists of several functions available on the toolbar, such as

- brightening
- rotating
- changing the color depth
- inserting text

This section explains WebImageFX.

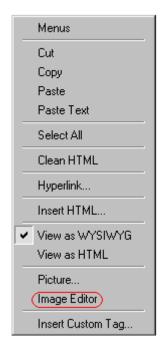
Important!

WebImageFX is an external, add-on product available from Ektron.

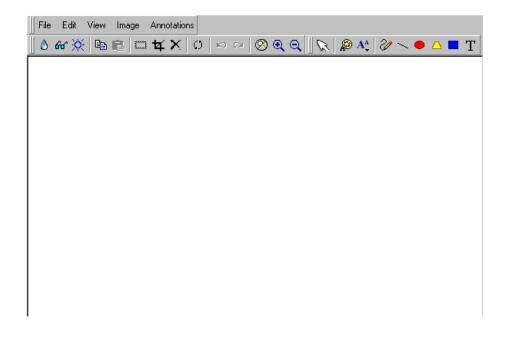
# Using WebImageFX

#### **Choosing the Image**

If you double click an image, it appears within WebImageFX. You can also right click the mouse and choose **Image Editor** from the menu that appears.



WebImageFX looks similar to **eWebeditPro+XML** but has different menu and toolbar buttons.



If the Image Edit button ( $\swarrow$ ) appears on your toolbar, you can click it to open WebImageFX. If no image is selected when you press the button or click the menu command, a blank editor appears, and you can use the **File -> Open** command to choose an image.

Once the image is in WebImageFX, you can use the buttons and menu options to edit it. The rest of this chapter describes those buttons and menu options.

#### Saving the Image

When you finish editing the image, you can insert it into the content by pressing the **Exit** button ( $\mathbb{P}$ ). Alternatively, you can save the image to a local or network folder using the Save button ( $\mathbb{H}$ ).

When you insert the image into the content, WebImageFX checks the file extension. If the image is a .gif file, it is saved as a .png file in your temporary directory. For example test.gif is saved as C:\Documents and Settings\your user name\Local Settings\Temp\test.png.

Any other file type is saved in your temporary directory without changing the file extension, *unless* you use the Save As option. For example, you save test.jpg as test.png.

#### Assigning a Name to a New Image

If you create an image in WebImageFX, and then exit WebImageFX and return to **eWebeditPro+XML**, the system assigns the image a random name, such as WIF50A.jpg.

If you want to assign a different name and/or folder to the image, use the Save as command.

See Also: "Save As" on page 272

# **Toolbar Buttons and Menu Commands**

The following tables list each toolbar button and menu command. They are followed by a more detailed description of each function.

# **File Menu Options**

Toolbar Button	Command	Brief Description	For more information, see
D	Create New	Creates a new image.	"Create New" on page 259
ž	Open	Selects an image to edit.	"Open" on page 265
	Save	Saves changes to an image.	"Save" on page 271
	Save As	Saves the current image under a different name or format.	"Save As" on page 272
7	Twain Acquire	Performs a single page scan. Before scanning, you must select a source using the Twain Source command.	"Twain Acquire" on page 277
20	Twain Source	Allows the user to select a source for acquiring an image, such as a scanner or digital camera.	"Twain Source" on page 277
<b>₽</b>	Exit	Save changes and return to eWebeditPro+XML.	"Exit" on page 261
<b>₽</b>	Exit without save	Ignore changes; return to eWebeditPro+XML.	"Exit without Save" on page 262
	Thumbnail	Creates a thumbnail of the current image.	"Thumbnail" on page 276
		Note: A thumbnail is a miniature display of an image. Thumbnails allow fast browsing though images.	

# **Edit Menu Options**

Toolbar Button	Command	Brief Description	For more information, see
	сору	Copies a selected area of an image.	"Copy" on page 259
<b>E</b>	paste as new image	Inserts copied image or area into a new file.	"Paste as New Image" on page 267
3	undo	Reverses the most recent action.	"Undo" on page 278
2	redo	Reapplies the changes from the command that occurred before you pressed Undo.	"Redo" on page 269
	select	Selects an area of an image. You can then perform actions on the area, such as blur and delete.	"Select" on page 273
¥	crop	Removes everything outside of selected area of an image.	"Crop" on page 259
×	delete	Deletes selected area of an image.	"Delete" on page 260

# **View Menu Options**

Toolbar Button	Command	Brief Description	For more information, see
$\otimes$	reset zoom ratio	Displays image at full size.	"Reset Zoom Ratio" on page 270
Q	zoom in	Increases an image's magnification.	"Zoom In" on page 278
Q	zoom out	Decreases an image's magnification.	"Zoom Out" on page 279

# Image Menu Options

Toolbar Button	Command	Brief Description	For more information, see
0	image info	Displays information about an image.	"Image Info" on page 263
¢	dimensions	Modifies an image's width and height.	"Dimensions" on page 260
*	color depth	Changes the number of colors available to an image.	"Color Depth" on page 257
۵	blur	Blurs or softens an image.	"Blur" on page 253
Δ	sharpen	Sharpens edges within an image.	"Sharpen" on page 273
×.	brightness	Changes an image's brightness.	"Brightness" on page 254
٥	contrast	Changes the difference between light and dark areas of an image.	"Contrast" on page 258
8	horizontal flip	Reverses an image horizontally left to right.	"Horizontal Flip" on page 263
1 <b>x</b>	vertical flip	Flips an image vertically top to bottom.	"Vertical Flip" on page 278
Ø	rotate	Turns an image a specified number of degrees.	"Rotate" on page 270

### **Annotation Menu Options**

Toolbar Button	Command	Brief Description	For more information, see
G	pointer selection	Click an annotation to select it.	"Pointer Selection" on page 267
	choose color	Sets the color for an annotation before you insert it.	"Choose Color" on page 255
Ą	choose font	Sets the color of text before you insert it.	"Choose Font" on page 256
2/	freehand	Draws a line in any shape that you want.	"Freehand" on page 262
	line	Draws a straight line.	"Line" on page 264
	oval	Draws an oval.	"Oval" on page 266
	polygon	Draws a polygon (a closed figure surrounded by straight lines).	"Polygon" on page 268
-	rectangle	Draws a rectangle.	"Rectangle" on page 269
Т	text	Inserts text.	"Text" on page 274

### Blur

Standard Toolbar Button

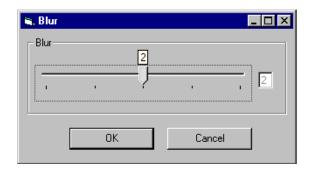
#### ٥

#### Description

Blurs or softens an image. You can select a level of blur, from 0 through 4.

If you select an area of the image, the command only changes that area.

#### **Dialog Box**



#### **Brightness**

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### Ņ.

#### Description

Increases or decreases an image's brightness. You can select a brightness level from 32 (brightest) through -32 (darkest).

If you select an area of the image, the command only changes that area.

**NOTE** You cannot adjust brightness if the image's bit depth is 8 or fewer. See Also: "Specifying Color Depth" on page 279

🐂 Brightness	- 🗆 ×
Brightness	
Ţ	0
OK Cancel	

### Choose Color Standard Toolbar Button

#### ø

Description

Lets you choose the color of an annotation before you insert it.

To change an annotation's color *after* inserting it, place the cursor on the annotation and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

#### **Dialog Box**



### Choose Font Standard Toolbar Button

A

#### Description

Lets you choose the color of annotation text before you insert it.

To change an annotation's color *after* inserting it, place the cursor on the annotation and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

Font		? ×
Eont: Arial O Arial Black O Arial Black O Arial Narrow T Arial Unicode MS T Batang O Berling Antiqua O Book Antiqua	Font style: Bold Regular Italic Bold Bold Italic	Size: 12 0K Cancel 14 16 18 20 22 24
	AaBbYyZ	Zz
	Script: Western	×

### Color Depth Standard Toolbar Button

8

Description

Changes an image's color depth.

See Also: "Specifying Color Depth" on page 279

🛢 Color Depth	
Color Depth	
C 1 bit (2 colors)	
4 bit (16 colors)	
C 8 bit (256 colors)	
<ul> <li>24 bit (16M colors)</li> </ul>	
OK	Cancel

### Contrast

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### 0

#### Description

Increases or decreases an image's contrast (that is, the difference between light and dark areas of an image). You can select a contrast level, from 10 through -10.

If you select an area of the image, the command only changes that area.

🐃 Contrast	_ 🗆 ×
Contrast	0
OK Cancel	

# Copy Standard Toolbar Button

Ē,

#### Description

Copies a selected area of an image. After you copy an image, you can paste it using the paste command. See Also: "Paste as New Image" on page 267

To select an area of an image, use the Select command. See Also: "Select" on page 273

If you do not select an area, the entire image is copied.

#### Create New

#### Standard Toolbar Button

D

#### Description

Lets you create a new image. If you are editing an image when you press this command, you are asked if you want to save changes to it first.

By default, a new image's bit depth is 24, but you can change it if desired using the color depth command.

See Also: "Color Depth" on page 257

#### Crop

Standard Toolbar Button

¥

Description

Keeps selected area of an image; removes everything outside that area.

To use the Crop command, follow these steps.

- 1. Select an area of an image that you want to keep.
- 2. Press the Crop button ( 4).
- 3. Everything outside the selected area is removed.

#### Delete

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### ×

#### Description

Removes a selected area of an image. You must select an area before you delete it.

The deleted area is not saved for later pasting. In contrast, if you use the Cut command, you can later paste the cut area.

#### Dimensions

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### ÷

#### Description

Lest you change an image's width and/or height, which are defined in pixels.

#### **Maintaining Aspect Ratio**

Use this check box to change an image's size while maintaining its *aspect ratio.* 



Aspect ratio is the ratio of an image's width to height. For example, if a graphic has an aspect ratio of 2:1, its width is twice as large as its height.

If you check the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** box, just specify a new width -- the height is calculated automatically.

#### **Dialog Box**

💐 Dimensions		_ 🗆 ×
Dimensions		
New Width:	218	
New Height:	74	
Maintain <u>A</u> spect	Ratio	
Current Width:	218	
Current Height:	74	
ОК	Cancel	

#### Exit

#### Standard Toolbar Button

₽•

#### Description

Save the change in the WebImageFX and return to **eWebeditPro+XML**, where the updated image appears.

# Exit without Save Standard Toolbar Button

#### **₽**•

Description

Ignore changes made to the image in WebImageFX. Return to eWebEditPro+XML.

#### Freehand

#### Standard Toolbar Button

Z

#### Description

Lets you draw a line in any shape that you want, similar to using a pen on paper.

To use this command, click the freehand command, drag the line, and release the mouse. To change the line's size or color, place the cursor on the line and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

Attributes			×	I
Line Attributes	Color Attributes			
Line Size	-			
☑ <u>H</u> ighlight				
		OK	Cancel	

# Horizontal Flip Standard Toolbar Button

#### **• •**

#### Description

Reverses an image horizontally left to right.

Click this command again to reverse the image horizontally right to left.

Image before horizontal flip

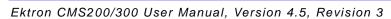
ip	В
----	---

В

Image after horizontal flip

### Image Info

Standard Toolbar Button



8

#### Description

Displays information about an image:

- image name
- height and width in pixels
- bit depth (See Also: "Specifying Color Depth" on page 279)
- file format

### Line Standard Toolbar Button

 $\sim$ 

#### Description

Draw a straight line. To change a line's size or color, right click it after drawing it.

To use this command, click the line command, drag the line, and release the mouse. To change the line's size or color, place the cursor on the line and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

Attributes			×
Line Attributes	Color Attributes		
Line Size	-		
☑ <u>H</u> ighlight			
		ОК	Cancel

#### Open

Standard Toolbar Button

#### 2

Description

Select an image for editing. The image can be on your computer or a local area network.

Load Image					? ×
Look jn:	🔁 eWebImageB	Edit	•	+ 🗈 💣 🎟	•
History History Desktop My Documents					
My Computer	, File <u>n</u> ame: Files of <u>typ</u> e:	JPEG Files (*.jpg,*.jpeg)		V V	<u>O</u> pen Cancel

To change the type of file that appears in the window, click the down arrow (circled above) to the right of the **Files of type** field. Your system administrator determines which types of files you can edit.

#### Oval

Standard Toolbar Button

•

#### Description

Draws an oval.

To use this command, click the oval command, drag the line, and release the mouse. To change the oval's line size or color, place the cursor on the line and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

Attributes			×
Line Attributes	Color Attributes		
Line Size	1		
☑ <u>H</u> ighlight			
		ОК	Cancel

#### Paste as New Image

#### Standard Toolbar Button

۲Ľ

#### Description

After you copy or cut an image or an area of an image, use paste as new image to insert it into a new file.

Before creating a new file, WebImageFX asks if you want to save changes to current file.

#### **Pointer Selection**

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### ß

#### Description

Click an annotation to select it. After you select an annotation, you can perform functions on it, such as delete it.

This command is a toggle, which means the the first time you click it, it is on, and the next time you click it, it is off.

# Polygon Standard Toolbar Button

#### $\bigtriangleup$

#### Description

Draws a polygon (that is, a closed figure surrounded by straight lines).

To use this command, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the polygon command.
- 2. Drag the line in one direction as far as you want.
- 3. Drag the line in the other directions to complete the polygon.
- 4. Double click the mouse to terminate the polygon.
- To change the polygon's line size or color, place the cursor on the line and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

Attributes			×
Line Attributes	Color Attributes		
Line Size	-		
☑ <u>H</u> ighlight			
		OK	Cancel

# Rectangle Standard Toolbar Button

#### Description

Draws a rectangle.

To use this command, click the rectangle command, drag a rectangle, and release the mouse. To change the rectangle's line size or color, place the cursor on the line and press the right mouse button to display the Attributes menu.

#### **Dialog Box**

Attributes		×
Line Attributes Color Attributes		
Line Size		
✓ Highlight		
	OK	Cancel

#### Redo

Standard Toolbar Button

C

Description

If you use the Undo command and then decide that it was a mistake, use this command. It re-applies the changes from the command that occurred before you pressed Undo.

See Also: "Undo" on page 278

#### **Reset Zoom Ratio**

#### Standard Toolbar Button

 $\otimes$ 

#### Description

Displays image at full size.

See Also: "Zoom In" on page 278; "Zoom Out" on page 279

#### Rotate

#### Standard Toolbar Button

 $\mathcal{O}$ 

#### Description

Turns an image a specified number of degrees. Note that the dialog box lets you rotate the image

- left or right
- 90, 180, or 270 degrees
- any number of degrees between 1 and 359

🐃 Rotate			_ 🗆 ×
Direction C Left	(	D <u>R</u> ight	
-Degree			
	C 180	C 270	
○ <u>F</u> ree:	90	(1 - 359)	
	ОК	Cancel	

#### Save

Standard Toolbar Button



#### Description

Save changes to an image. If required information is missing, such as the image name, you are prompted for this information.

#### **Dialog Box**

Save Image As			? ×
Save in:	🚍 Local Disk (C:)		<b>⊞ -</b>
History Desktop My Documents	ADOBEAPP BDE CFUSION Config.Msi Documents and Settings EktronDev ewebeditpro file drop framemaker test	<ul> <li>image gear</li> <li>Inetpub</li> <li>Install</li> <li>IOnEdit_Manual</li> <li>mspoInt</li> <li>MSSQL7</li> <li>My Music</li> <li>Norton SystemWorks2001 v401</li> <li>portutility</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Program Files</li> <li>PSFONTS</li> <li>System Volume</li> <li>Tech Pubs dep</li> <li>Temp</li> <li>unzipped</li> <li>v1</li> <li>vbroker</li> <li>ViewletBuilder2</li> </ul>
My Computer	File <u>n</u> ame: Untitled1 Save as <u>type: GIF Files (*.gif</u>		<u>S</u> ave Cancel

**NOTE** The dialog box only appears the first time you save the image. If you later want to save it to a different folder, or under a different name or file type, use the Save As command.

### Save As Standard Toolbar Button

#### P

#### Description

Save the current image under a different name or format. For example, you might save mypicture.gif as mypicture.jpg.

Your system administrator determines which file formats are available.

#### See "Save" on page 271

# Select Standard Toolbar Button

 $\square$ 

#### Description

Selects an area of an image. You can then execute other commands on the selected area, such as blur, sharpen, cut, and delete.

**NOTE** Once you press the Select command, it remains selected and continues to be active until you press it a second time.

#### Sharpen

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### Δ

#### Description

Sharpens edges within an image. You can select a level of sharpness, from 1 through 5.

Sharpening brings an image into better focus and increases the detail.

If you select an area of the image, the command only changes that area.

🖏 Sharpen				_ 🗆 ×
- Sharpen				
ΙY .	ı.	ı.	i.	, 0
I				
		_		
	OK		Cancel	

#### Text

#### Standard Toolbar Button

#### Т

#### Description

Places text on an image. You can also change the text's size, font, color, and attributes (bold, italic, etc.).

To use the Text command, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the Text button  $(\mathbf{T})$ .
- 2. Move the cursor to where you want to place the text.
- 3. Click the mouse button and drag a rectangle in which to insert the text.

**NOTE** Make sure the rectangle is large enough to accommodate your text. The rectangle disappears after you enter text.

- 4. Type the text.
- 5. Click outside the rectangle to close it.
- 6. To change the text or its font, size, style, color, etc., place the cursor over the text and right click the mouse. The text attributes dialog appears.

#### **Dialog Box**

Attributes	×
Font Attributes Color Attributes	Text Attributes
Eont: @Batang @MS Mincho @PMingLiU	Style: Bold 💌 Size:
©SimSun Arial Arial Disat	12
_ <u>S</u> ample: AaBbYyZz	□ <u>U</u> ndetline □ Stri <u>k</u> eout
	OK Cancel

The following table lists functions you can perform with this dialog.

To change this	Use this tab/field
font	Font Attributes/Font
font size	Font Attributes/Size
font style ( <b>bold</b> , <i>italic</i> , etc.)	Font Attributes/Style
underlining	Font Attributes/Underline
strikeout (for example, sample)	Font Attributes/Strikethrough
font color	Color Attributes/Primary Color
text	Text Attributes/white box
if text wraps when it reaches the end of a line	Text Attributes/ Wrap

# Thumbnail Standard Toolbar Button



#### Description

Create a thumbnail of the current image. A dialog box prompts you to define the thumbnail.

#### **Dialog Box**

🐃 Thumbnail	
Thumbhail Height:	Pixels Pixels
Save Thumbnail As: C:\WINNT\Web\Wallpaper\thumbnail.jpg	
(Create )	Close

To create a thumbnail, follow these steps.

- 1. Define the size of the thumbnail. 100 x 100 pixels is the standard size, but you can change it.
- 2. Assign the thumbnail a name and folder location using the **Save Thumbnail As** field. To change the default name, you can either type the new file name into the field or click the button with the three dots (circled above) and navigate to a different folder.
- 3. Click **Create**. When you do, the image appears in the **Preview** box so that you can see what it will look like.

# Twain Acquire Standard Toolbar Button

ア

#### Description

Perform a single page scan from a previously selected source.

See Also: "Twain Source" on page 277

#### Importing Scanned Images

WebImageFX lets you acquire images from a scanner or digital camera that supports the Twain standard. You select the source (using Twain Source) and do a quick acquire from that source (using Twain Acquire).

#### Limitations

- You can only acquire one page at a time
- Few digital cameras support twain. Usually, digital cameras resemble a hard drive or use proprietary software to extract images. Ektron does not support an interface to proprietary software.
- Not all scanners support the twain standard

#### **Twain Source**

#### Standard Toolbar Button

وا

#### Description

Lest you select a source for acquiring an image, such as a scanner or digital camera.

See Also: "Twain Acquire" on page 277

### Undo Standard Toolbar Button

K)

Description

Reverses the most recent commands within the current editing session.

You can undo several commands at once by pressing the undo command repeatedly. The first time you press the command, the most recently completed command is "undone." The next time, the second most recently completed command is "undone", etc.

See Also: "Redo" on page 269

### Vertical Flip Standard Toolbar Button

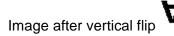
‡≍

#### Description

Flips an image vertically top to bottom.

Click this command again to reverse the image vertically bottom to top.

Image before vertical flip



Zoom In

Standard Toolbar Button

Q

#### Description

Increases an image's magnification.

You can press this command several times to continue to increase magnification.

See Also: "Zoom Out" on page 279; "Reset Zoom Ratio" on page 270

### Zoom Out

### Q

#### Standard Toolbar Button

Decrease an image's magnification.

You can press this command several times to continue to decrease magnification.

See Also: "Zoom In" on page 278; "Reset Zoom Ratio" on page 270

# Specifying Color Depth

To specify an image's color depth (that is, the number of colors available to an image), specify a *bit depth*. The color depth is derived from the bit depth. Here are the bit depth values.

Bit depth	Color depth
1	2 colors
4	16 colors
8	256 colors
24	16M colors

# **Introduction to Tables**

Sometimes, the information on your Web page looks better when displayed on a table. Here is an example.

City	Baseball Team	Hockey Team
Boston	Red Sox	Bruins
New York	Yankees / Mets	Rangers
Chicago	White Sox / Cubs	Black Hawks

This section explains

- Creating a Table
- Deleting a Table
- Inserting a Table within a Table

See Also: "Table Dialog Boxes and Menus" on page 284, "Manipulating Your Table's Format" on page 293, "Working with Table Cells" on page 308 and "Section 508 Tables" on page 350

# Creating a Table

To create a table, click the table button ( $\blacksquare$ ) then click **Insert Table** from the menu. When you do, the Insert Table dialog box appears.

Insert Table			×
Size			
<u>R</u> ows:	2		ОК
<u>C</u> olumns:	3		Cancel
- Layout		Borders	
	75%	Use D <u>e</u> fault Color	
	C Not Specified	B <u>o</u> rder Color:	
	⊙ Pe <u>r</u> cent ⊂ Pi <u>x</u> els	<u>B</u> order Size:	2
Horizontal <u>A</u> lignment:	V	Cell <u>P</u> adding:	2
		Cell <u>S</u> pacing:	3
Custom Background			
Bac <u>k</u> ground Color:	🔽 🚺 🔽 Unassi	gned	
Background Image:			
		<u> </u>	rom File

You can also access this dialog box after you insert it. You would do this if you wanted to edit any of the information entered in the dialog.

To access this dialog after insertion, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the table.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Table Properties from the menu.

When creating a table, you can specify the

number of rows and columns

- width
- horizontal alignment on the page
- background color or background picture
- border size and color

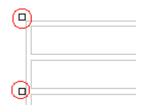
For more information about managing tables, see "Manipulating Your Table's Format" on page 293.

For more information about managing individual cells within a table, see "Working with Table Cells" on page 308.

## **Deleting a Table**

To delete a table, follow these steps

- Move the cursor over the table until the cursor becomes a fourheaded arrow (\*\*).
- 2. Click the mouse button. The table becomes selected (small squares appear around it).



3. Press <Delete>.

### Inserting a Table within a Table

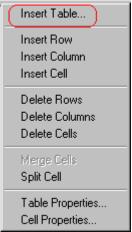
You can insert a table within a table. You might want to do this to arrange text in columns.

Horizontal	Right	Left	Center
Alignment	text	text	text

**NOTE** HTML does not let you use tabs or spaces to align text in columns. You must use a table to align columns. You can remove the table's border, so that no lines appear between the columns and rows.

To insert a table within a table, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell into which you want to insert a table.
- 2. Click the Insert Table button (I).
- 3. Click Insert Table from the menu.



- 4. The Insert Table dialog box appears.
- 5. Edit the fields in the dialog box as needed. Then, click OK.

# **Table Dialog Boxes and Menus**

This section explains the menu options and dialog boxes you use to manipulate tables and cells. In most cases, you are referred to another section that describes the feature in more detail.

This section explains

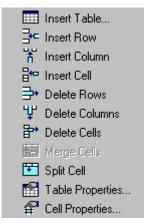
- The Insert Table Menu
- The Table Properties Dialog Box
- The Cell Properties Dialog Box
- The Table Context Sensitive Menu

# The Insert Table Menu

You access the Insert Table menu by clicking on the Insert Table button (
) while the cursor is inside a table.

**NOTE** Before you click the button, make sure the table is not selected (that is, the table is not surrounded by small boxes).

When you do, the following menu appears.



The following table lists the menu options and where to get more information on each.

Menu Option	Description	For more information, see
Insert Table	Inserts a new table where the cursor is currently resting	"Creating a Table" on page 281
Insert Row	Creates a new table row above the row in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Insert Column	Creates a new table column next to the column in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Insert Cell	Inserts a cell to the left of the cursor in a table	
Delete Rows	Deletes table row in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Delete Column	Deletes table column in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Delete Cells	Deletes the selected cells	
Merge Cells	Combines the contents of two or more selected cells into one	"Merging Two Cells" on page 328

Menu Option	Description	For more information, see
Split Cell	Divides a cell into two. Each cell occupies one half the size of the original cell.	"Splitting a Cell" on page 327
Table Properties	Displays and lets you edit table properties, such as the number of rows and columns, cell padding, and borders.	"The Table Properties Dialog Box" on page 286
Cell Properties	Displays and lets you edit cell properties, such as width and alignment	"The Cell Properties Dialog Box" on page 288

# The Table Properties Dialog Box

The Insert Table dialog box lets you manipulate most elements of a table's appearance.

Size     OK       Bows:     Image: Cancel       Columns:     3       Layout     Borders       Width:     75%		Insert Table
Bows:     Image: Cancel       Columns:     3       Layout     Borders		Size
Columns: 3 Layout Borders	2	<u>R</u> ows:
		<u>C</u> olumns:
Width: 75% Use Default Color	Borders	Layout
—	75% Use Default Color	<u>W</u> idth:
C Not Specified Border Color:		
Percent     Pigels     Border Size:     2		
Horizontal Alignment: Cell Padding: 2	ent: Cell <u>P</u> adding: 2	Horizontal <u>A</u> lignment:
Cell <u>Spacing</u> :	Cell <u>Spacing</u> :	
Custom Background	d	Custom Background
Background Color:	r: Unassigned	Bac <u>k</u> ground Color:
Background Image:	e:	Background Image:
From File	Erom File	

The following table lists the fields on this dialog box and refers you to the section that explains each field.

Field(s)	Lets you specify	For more information, see
Size: Rows, Columns	The number of rows and columns in the table	"Choosing the Number of Rows and Columns" on page 293
Layout: Width	Table width	"Specifying Table Width" on page 295
Layout: Horizontal Alignment	The table's alignment across the Web page	"Setting Horizontal Alignment" on page 321
Background Color	The background color of the table	"Specifying a Table's Background Color" on page 301
Background Image	A background image for the table	"Specifying a Background Image for a Table" on page 302
Borders: Use Default Color	Whether or not to use the default color (gray) for table borders	
Border Color	If you do not use the default, the color of the table border	"Assigning Border Color" on page 304
Border Size	The size of the table border	"Assigning Border Size" on page 306
Cell Padding	The space (in pixels) between the cell text and a cell's border	"Assigning Cell Padding" on page 331
Cell Spacing	The space (in pixels) between a cell and surrounding cells	"Assigning Cell Spacing" on page 332

# The Cell Properties Dialog Box

The Cell Properties dialog box lets you manipulate most elements of a cell's appearance.

Cell Properties			×
Span			ОК
<u>R</u> ows Spanned:			
<u>C</u> olumns Spanned:			Cancel
Layout		Borders	
		Use D <u>e</u> fault Color	
	• Not Specified	B <u>o</u> rder Color:	
✓ Word Wrap	○ Pe <u>r</u> cent ○ Pi <u>x</u> els		
Horizontal <u>A</u> lignment:	<b></b>		
⊻ertical Alignment:			
Custom Background			
Bac <u>kg</u> round Color:	Unassi	gned	
Background Image:			
		<b>•</b>	Erom File

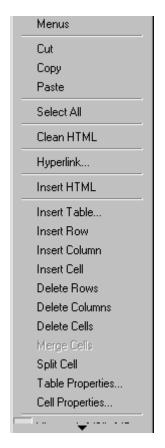
The following table lists the fields on this dialog box and refers you to the section that explains each field.

Field(s)	Lets you specify	For more information, see
Rows Spanned	If the cell spans two or more rows	"Spanning Rows or Columns" on page 318
Columns Spanned	If the cell spans two or more columns	"Spanning Rows or Columns" on page 318
Width	The minimum cell width	"Specifying the Width of a Cell" on page 308

Field(s)	Lets you specify	For more information, see
Word Wrap	Whether text moves down to the next line when it reaches the specified width of a cell	"Word Wrap" on page 329
Horizontal Alignment	The alignment of data across a cell	"Setting Horizontal Alignment" on page 321
Vertical Alignment	The alignment of data up and down within a cell	"Setting Vertical Alignment" on page 324
Background Color	The cell's background color, if you want it to be different from the table's background color	"Specifying a Cell's Background Color" on page 314
Background Image	A background image for the cell	"Specifying a Background Image for a Cell" on page 315
Use Default Color	Apply the table border color to this cell border	
Border Color	Apply a color other than the table border color to this cell border	"Setting a Cell's Border Color" on page 312

# The Table Context Sensitive Menu

The following menu appears when you right click the mouse while the cursor is in a table.



The following table lists the menu options and where to get more information on each.

Menu Option	Description	For more information, see
Menus	Displays toolbar menus. Click a menu to display it options. Then, click a menu option to perform its function, such a copying text.	"Using eWebeditPro+XML without a Mouse" on page 348

Menu Option	Description	For more information, see
Cut	Removes selected text and graphics. Places that data into temporary memory, also known as the "clipboard."	
	(If you later cut or copy more information onto the clipboard, the new information overwrites the original information.)	
Сору	Copies selected text and graphics into temporary memory. Leaves selected data where it is. (If you later cut or copy more information into	
	memory, the original information is lost.)	
Paste	Inserts the most recently cut or copied text and graphics at the current cursor location.	
Select All	Selects all information on your page. After you select it, you can cut it, copy it, etc.	
Clean HTML	Removes unnecessary HTML tags	"Cleaning HTML" on page 345
Hyperlink	Creates a link to another Web page or a spot within the current page	"Using Hyperlinks" on page 337
Insert HTML	Inserts HTML onto the page at the cursor location.	"Inserting HTML" on page 344
Edit HTML	Edits your page's HTML	"Editing a Section of a Page" on page 344
Insert Table	Inserts a new table where the cursor is currently resting	"Creating a Table" on page 281
Insert Row	Creates a new table row above the row in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Insert Column	Creates a new table column next to the column in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Insert Cell	Inserts a cell to the left of the cursor in a table	"Inserting a Cell" on page 310

Menu Option	Description	For more information, see
Delete Row	Deletes table row in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Delete Column	Deletes table column in which the cursor is currently resting	"Adding or Removing Rows and Columns" on page 294
Delete Cell	Deletes the selected cells	"Deleting a Cell" on page 311
Merge Cells	Combines the contents of two or more selected cells into one	"Merging Two Cells" on page 328
Split Cell	Divides a cell into two. Each cell occupies one half the size of the original cell.	"Splitting a Cell" on page 327
Table Properties	Displays and lets you edit table properties, such as the number of rows and columns, and their width	"The Table Properties Dialog Box" on page 286

# Manipulating Your Table's Format

This section explains how to manipulate your table's format by specifying

- a number of rows and columns
- a width
- horizontal alignment
- a background color or image
- border color and size

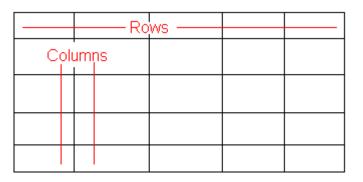
**NOTE** You can also apply most of these properties to individual cells within a table. See "Working with Table Cells" on page 308 for details.

# Choosing the Number of Rows and Columns

Use the **Size** section of the Insert Table dialog box to specify the number of rows and columns in the table.

nsert Table		
- Size		
<u>R</u> ows: <u>C</u> olumns:	2	

A row is a horizontal series of cells, while a column is a vertical series.



If you know how many rows and columns the table will be, enter those numbers. If you don't know the number of rows and columns you need when you create the table, estimate how many you need. You can add or remove rows and columns later.

#### **Placement of Inserted Row or Column**

If you add a row, it appears above the row in which the cursor was resting when you pressed **Insert Row**.

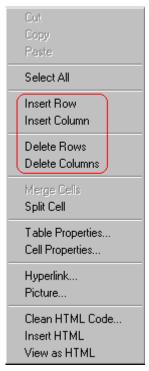
If you add a column, it appears on the left side of the table.

#### Adding or Removing Rows and Columns

To add or remove rows and columns after you create the table, follow these steps.

1. Place the cursor in the cell from which you want to add or delete.

2. Right click the mouse. A menu appears.



- 3. Click the appropriate action from the menu. For example to add a row, click **Insert Row**.
- **NOTE** If you are working with nested tables, and you add or remove a column then undo that action and redo it, you must press the redo button once for each cell in the row or column.

# Specifying Table Width

When you create a table, you can set its width by specifying one of the following:

- percentage of the window: the table's width varies as a user adjusts the browser size
- *fixed number of pixels*, the table's width stays the same as a user adjusts the browser size

You can also *not* set a width but instead let information you enter into the table's cells determine its width.

**NOTE** To set the width of a table column, adjust the width of one of the cells within the column (as described in "Specifying the Width of a Cell" on page 308). Usually, this change affects all other cells in the column.

#### Specifying Table Width by Percentage

Specify table width by percentage if you want the table to be resized as the user resizes the browser.

**NOTE** In order for the table to resize with the browser, the Word Wrap attribute must be turned on in all of a table's cells. For details, see "Word Wrap" on page 329.

For example, if you specify that a table is 100% wide, and your browser displays 14 inches across when it is maximized, the table fills the screen (except for the browser border).

Sack Forward Reload Hor				
able Properties				
Horizontal Alignment	Sets the horizontal position of the entire table.			
Border Color Sets the color of the table borders unless Use Default Color is checked.				
Border Size Sets the thickness of the table borders in pixels.				
ell Padding Sets the spacing around the text in a table cell.				
Cell Spacing	Sets the spacing between cells in the table			
Background Color	Sets the background color of the table unless Unassigned is checked.			
Background Image	Sets the image to be displayed in the table's background.			

If you resize the browser to half the screen, the table will be about 7" wide. You still see both columns, but some of the data is moved

down.

👯 N e	etscape							_ 🗆 ×
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew	<u>G</u> o <u>C</u> o	ommun	icator	<u>H</u> elp			
	🔮 Back Fi	orward	Seloa	ed be	Mome	<i>i</i> Search	My. Netscape	Ν
Tal	ble Prop	oerties	5					
	orizontal lignment				the hor ntire ta		osition of	
В	Border Color		1	bord		or of the ess <i>Use</i> ecked.		
В	order Siz	e			the thic ers in p		f the table	3
С				the spa n a tabl	acing aro e cell.	ound the		

#### Setting Table Width by Percentage

To specify table width by percentage, choose **Percent** in the layout section of the Insert Table dialog box. Then, specify the percentage at the **Width** field.

Insert Table	
- Size	
<u>R</u> ows: <u>C</u> olumns:	2 2
Layout	
	100%
	<ul> <li>○ <u>N</u>ot Specified</li> <li>○ Percent</li> <li>○ Pixels</li> </ul>
I I and a start of the second start	center

### Specifying Table Width by Pixels

Specify table width by pixels if you want the table to remain the same size if a user resizes the browser.

For example, if you specify that a table is 610 pixels wide, and the user's browser is set to low resolution ( $640 \times 480$  pixels), the table occupies the full width of the browser when it is maximized.

If the user resizes the browser so that it only occupies the left half of the screen, only the left half of the table appears. A scroll bar appears at the bottom of the browser. The user must move the scroll bar to see the rest of the table.

敚	Netsca	ъре						_ 🗆 ×
Eil	e <u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>G</u> o <u>(</u>	Communicator	<u>H</u> elp			
• manage	ack 🔮	F	orward	3. Reload	Mome	🯄 Search	My. Netscape	N
ſ	able	Prop	ertie	es				
	Horiz	ontal	Alignr	nent		Sets t	ne horizor	ital posi
Н	Bord	er Co	lor			Sets t	he color of	f the tak
Н	Bord	er Siz	e			Sets t	he thickne	ss of th
	Cell F	<sup>p</sup> addi	ng			Sets t	ne spacinį	g aroun
	Cell S	Spaci	ng			Sets t	ne spacinį	g betwe
	Back	grour	nd Col	or		Sets th	he backgri	ound co
	Back	grour	id Ima	ge		Sets ti	ne image t	to be di:
<b>▲</b>	<b>-</b>			Docume		<u>∿≞</u> , ⊴	P 🖪	• •

If you set table width by pixels, do not set it to more than 610 pixels. Otherwise, the table will not fully display on a monitor set to low resolution ( $640 \times 480$ ).

#### Setting Table Width by Pixels

To specify table width by pixels, choose **Pixels** in the layout section of the Insert Table dialog box. Then, specify the number of pixels at the **Width** field.

Insert Table	
Size	
<u>R</u> ows: <u>C</u> olumns:	2
Layout	
Width:	610
	○ <u>N</u> ot Specified ○ Percent ○ Pixels

# **Specifying Horizontal Alignment**

You can specify your table's horizontal alignment (left, right, or center) within the browser.

Alignment	Example
left	
right	

Alignment	Example
center	

If you specify right or left justify, you can wrap text around the table. To do this, move the cursor to the right or left of the table and begin typing.

Table Properties			
Horizontal Alignment	Sets the horizontal position of the entire table.	In this example, the table is left justified, so this	
Border Color	Sets the color of the table borders unless <i>Use Default Color</i> is checked.	text appears to the right of the table.	
Border Size	Sets the thickness of the table borders in pixels.		

Specify the table alignment at the **Horizontal Alignment** field on the Layout area of the Insert Table dialog box.

Layout	
<u>₩</u> idth:	100%
	<ul> <li>○ <u>N</u>ot Specified</li> <li>○ Percent</li> <li>○ Pixels</li> </ul>
Horizontal <u>A</u> lignment:	center

# Table Backgrounds

You can specify a background color or image for your table.

### Specifying a Table's Background Color

You can assign a background color to a table to make it more pleasing to the eye. Here is an example.

Width	Sets the width of the table on the p percentage or by pixel width.	age in terms of a
Horizontal Alignn	Sets the horizontal position of the eleft, center, right.	entire table. For example,
Border Color	Sets the color of the table borders u is checked.	ınle <mark>ss Use Default Color</mark>
<b>NOTE</b> If you apply a dark background color to a table, you may want to apply a light foreground color to the text. Use the font color button (A) to change the text color.		

To assign a background color to your table, click the **Background Color** field on the Insert Table dialog box.

- Custom Background	
Bac <u>k</u> ground Color:	☑ <u>U</u> nassigned

When you click that field, a color dialog box appears. Click the color that you want to apply to the background of the table.

Follow these steps to get help on how to use the color box.

1. Click the question mark in the top right corner.

Color		?×
Basic colors:		
Custom colors	:	
Defi	ine Custom Colors :	>>
OK	Cancel	

- 2. A large question mark appears next to your cursor.
- 3. Drag the question mark to the area of the dialog box that you want to learn about.
- 4. Click the mouse button. A box appears with instructions for that area.

#### Deleting a Table's Background Color

To delete a table's background color, click the **Unassigned** box in the **Custom Background** area of the Insert Table dialog box.

- Custom Background	
Background Color:	☑ <u>U</u> nassigned

### Specifying a Background Image for a Table

If you want a background image to appear in all table cells, use the **Background Image** field of the Insert Table dialog box.

Custom Background		
Background Color:	Unassigned	
Background Image:		
	(Select Image)	•

Your Webmaster determines which images are available to you.

To insert a background image

- 1. Click the down arrow to the right of (**Select Image**). A list of background images appears.
- 2. Click the image of your choice.
- 3. Click OK.

Note that when you apply a background image to a table

- it applies to the entire table, including the borders.
- if the table is larger than the image, the image repeats until it fills the table.
- if the image is larger than the table, the top left corner of the image aligns with the top left corner of the table. The rest of the image fills as much of the table as possible.
- you can also apply an image to individual cells (see "Specifying a Background Image for a Cell" on page 315).
- make sure that the image does not obscure user's ability to read the table text.

#### Deleting a Background Image

1. Move the cursor to any cell on the table and right click the mouse.

2. Click Table Properties from the menu.



- 3. Select the value in the **Background Image** field and press <Backspace>.
- 4. Click **OK**.

## **Setting Table Borders**

You can specify a border color or size for your table.

### **Assigning Border Color**

A table border is the line that separates the table from the rest of your Web page. By default, table borders are gray. You can change the color of table borders.

table border		
plor is checked.		
cell border		

If you want a table's border to "disappear," set it to the same color as the page's background color. This technique is often used to format text on a Web page.

#### Assigning a Cell Border Color

Each cell also has a border that separates it from the other cells and the table border. By default, a cell's border color matches the table border. However, you can individually change a cell border color (see "Setting a Cell's Border Color" on page 312).

To assign a color to your table's border, click the **Border Color** field on the Insert Table dialog box.

Borders	
Use D <u>e</u> fault Color	
Border Color:	
<u>B</u> order Size:	5

When you click that field, a color selection box appears. Click the color that you want to apply to the table's border. Follow these steps to get help on how to use the color box.

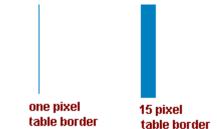
1. Click the question mark in the top right corner.

Color		?×
Basic colors:		
Custom colors	:	
Defi	ne Custom Colors :	>>
OK	Cancel	

- 2. A large question mark appears next to your cursor.
- 3. Drag the question mark to the area of the dialog box that you want to learn about.
- 4. Click the mouse button. A box appears with instructions for that area.

### **Assigning Border Size**

You can also adjust the size of a table border. Size is measured in pixels.



To assign a border size to your table, enter a number of pixels into the **Border Size** field on the Insert Table dialog box.

Borders	
Use Default Color	
Border Color:	
Border Size:	5

If you set a table's border size to zero (0) but wish to view the table's boundary lines while you are editing it, select the table and click the border button ( $\square$ ). Boundary lines will appear while you are editing but disappear when a user views the page.

# Working with Table Cells

Along with functions for managing tables (described in "Introduction to Tables" on page 280 and "Manipulating Your Table's Format" on page 293), eWebeditPro+XML also lets you perform actions on individual cells within a table.

You can perform the following actions on individual table cells.

- Specify a width.
- Insert or delete cells.
- Specify a border color.
- Specify a background color or image.
- Have a cell span two or more columns or rows.
- Specify horizontal and vertical alignment of the data within the cell.
- Split a cell into two cells.
- Merge two cells into one.
- Turn word wrap on or off.
- Set cell padding and spacing.

**NOTE** HTML does not allow you to adjust the width of a cell's border.

You can also select several cells or a row of cells and change them as described above. However, you cannot select and change a column of cells.

### Specifying the Width of a Cell

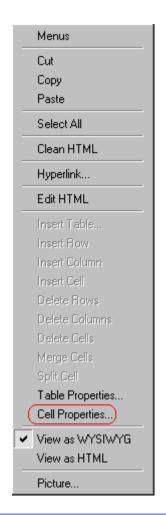
As described in "Specifying Table Width" on page 295, there are several ways to set the width of a table. Within a table, you can also specify the width of an individual cell.

When you set a cell width, there is no guarantee that the cell will occupy that width when displayed in a browser. This is because the cell is part of a column, and changes to other cells in the column can affect the cell whose width you set. Setting cell width only guarantees that the cell will not be *less than* the width you specify.

If you want to ensure that a cell's size does not change, set all cells in a column to that width.

To specify a cell's width, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell whose width you want to set.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.



4. The Cell Properties dialog box appears.

Cell Properties	
Span	
<u>R</u> ows Spanned:	
<u>C</u> olumns Spanned:	
Layout	
Width:	
	<u>N</u> ot Specified
Word Wrap	○ Percent ○ Pixels

- In the layout section of the dialog box, enter the cell width at the Width field. You can enter the width in pixels or percentage. These choices are explained in "Specifying Table Width" on page 295.
- 6. Click **OK**.

## **Inserting a Cell**

To insert a cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the right of where you want the new cell to appear.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Insert Cell from the menu.

The new cell appears to the left of the cell in which the cursor resides when you click **Insert Cell**. The cursor cell and all cells to its right shift right to make room for the new cell.

In this example, the cursor was in cell "b" when the user clicked **Insert Cell**.

#### **Before**

a	Ъ cursor	с
d	e	f

After

a	new cell	b	с
d	е	f	

# **Deleting a Cell**

To delete one or more cells, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the first cell you want to delete.
- 2. To delete only that cell, proceed to the next step. To delete several contiguous cells, select them. Contiguous cells can cross rows.
- 3. Right click the mouse.
- 4. Click **Delete Cells** from the menu.

Any cells to the right of the deleted cells shift left to occupy the vacant space.

In this example, the cursor was in cell "b" when the user clicked on **Delete Cells**.

#### Before

a	Ъ cursor	С
d	е	f

After

a	с	
d	e	f

# Setting a Cell's Border Color

A cell border is the line that separates it from other cells.

By default, the color of a cell's border matches the color of the table border. However, you can change the color of any cell border individually.

**NOTE** When viewed in Netscape Navigator, cell borders are gray, regardless of any change you make on the Cell Properties dialog box.

This example illustrates the effect of different cell border colors within a table.

Sets the color of the table bc

Sets the thickness of the tab

Sote the enacing around the

If you want a cell's border to "disappear," set it to the same color as the table's background color.

To change the color of a cell's border, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the cell and right click the mouse.
- 2. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.



3. Click the Border Color field on the Cell Properties dialog box.

Borders		
Use Default Color		
Border Color:		

4. When you click that field, a Windows Color selection box appears. Click the color that you want to apply to the cell border.

See Also: "Using the Color Box" on page 317

Color		?×
Basic colors:		
Custom colors	:	
Defi	ne Custom Colors >>	
OK	Cancel	

### Specifying a Cell's Background Color

"Specifying a Table's Background Color" on page 301 explains how to apply a background color to a table. You can also apply a background color to a cell.

To apply a background color to a cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the cell and right click the mouse.
- 2. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.
- 3. Click the **Background Color** field on the Cell Properties dialog box.

- Custom Background	
Bac <u>kg</u> round Color:	☑ <u>U</u> nassigned

4. When you click that field, a Windows Color selection box appears.

See Also: "Using the Color Box" on page 317

Color		?×
Basic colors:		
Custom colors	:	
Defi	ine Custom Colors >	>
OK	Cancel	

5. Click a color to apply to the background of the cell.

#### **Deleting a Cell's Background Color**

To delete a cell's background color, click the **Unassigned** box in the **Custom Background** area of the Cell Properties dialog box.

- Custom Background	
Bac <u>k</u> ground Color:	☑ <u>U</u> nassigned

### Specifying a Background Image for a Cell

"Specifying a Background Image for a Table" on page 302 explains how to apply a background image to a table. You can also apply a background image to a cell.

Your Webmaster determines which images are available.

To insert an image into a cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the cell and right click the mouse.
- 2. Click Cell Properties from the menu.
- 3. Move the cursor to the **Background Image** field of the Cell Properties dialog box.

Custom Background		
Background Color:	Unassigned	
Background Image:		
	(Select Image)	

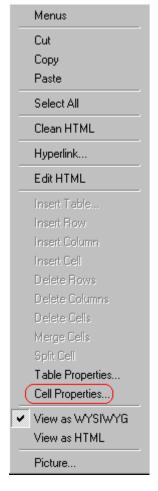
- Click the down arrow to the right of (Select Image). A list of background images appears.
- 5. Click the image of your choice.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Note that when you apply a background image to a cell

- If the cell is larger than the image, the image repeats until it fills the cell.
- If the cell is smaller than the image, the top left corner of the image appears in the top left corner of the cell. The rest of the image fills as much of the cell as possible.
- Make sure the image does not obscure a user's ability to read the cell text (if any exists).

#### **Deleting a Background Image**

- 1. Move the cursor to the cell and right click the mouse.
- 2. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.



3. Select the value in the **Background Image** field and press <Backspace>.

#### **Using the Color Box**

Follow these steps to get help on how to use the color box.

1. Click the question mark in the top right corner.

Color		?×
Basic colors:		
Custom colors	:	
Defi	ne Custom Colors	>>
OK	Cancel	

- 2. A large question mark appears next to your cursor.
- 3. Drag the question mark to the area of the dialog box that you want to learn about.
- 4. Click the mouse button. A box appears with instructions for that area.

### Spanning Rows or Columns

You can create a table cell that stretches across more than one row or column. In the following table, notice how the row that contains "Sports Teams" spans three columns.

Sports Teams		
City	Baseball Team	Hockey Team
Boston	Red Sox	Bruins

Sports Teams		
City	Baseball Team	Hockey Team
New York	Yankees	Rangers
Chicago	White Sox	Black Hawks

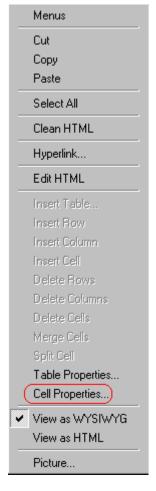
You can also create a column that spans several rows, as illustrated below. Notice that Boston spans three rows.

Colleges	
City	Name
Boston	Boston College
	Northeastern University
	Boston University
New York	Columbia University

#### Spanning More than One Row or Column

To have a table cell span more than one row or column, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell that will span rows or columns.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.



4. The Cell Properties dialog box appears. In the **Rows Spanned** or **Columns Spanned** field, enter the number of rows or columns that you want this cell to span.

C	Cell Properties		
	Span		
	<u>R</u> ows Spanned: <u>C</u> olumns Spanned:		

5. Click OK.

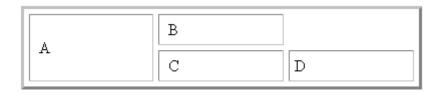
#### Effect of Spanning a Cell

When you set a cell to span rows or columns, the editor does not remove the cells that are in the way. Instead, it moves those cells across or down to the next available position.

For example, the following table has two rows and two columns.

A	В
С	D

If you set cell A to span two rows, note that cell C moves across to make room for cell A. This action pushes cell D to the next column.



### Aligning Text Within a Cell

Within a cell, you can specify how your text aligns horizontally and vertically.

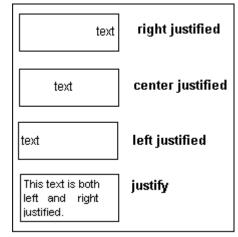
#### **Setting Horizontal Alignment**

In the Cell Properties dialog box, you can specify the horizontal alignment of a cell. You have set the alignment to left, center, or right, or

- left
- center
- right

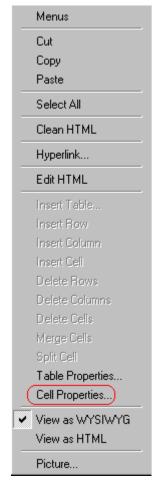
 justify - the text is justified down both left and right edges. Many books use this alignment style. (This alignment is not supported by all browsers.)

This example illustrates these choices.



To set horizontal justification of a table cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell that you want to edit.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Cell Properties from the menu



4. The Cell Properties dialog box appears. Click the down arrow to the right of the **Horizontal Alignment** field.

Cell Properties	
- Span	
<u>R</u> ows Spanned:	
<u>C</u> olumns Spanned:	2
- Layout	
<u>W</u> idth:	50%
	O Not Specified
	Percent
🔽 Wor <u>d</u> Wrap	O Pi <u>x</u> els
Horizontal <u>A</u> lignment:	
	1_4

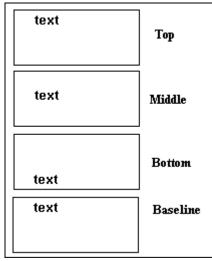
5. Click your choice from the list and click **OK**.

#### **Setting Vertical Alignment**

In the Cell Properties dialog box, you can specify the vertical alignment of a cell. You have four choices.

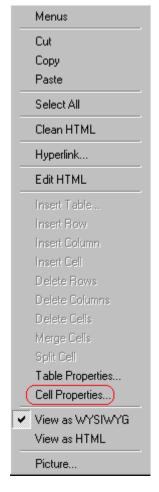
- top
- middle
- bottom
- along the baseline of the first line of text (the term "baseline" is defined in "Aligning the Picture" on page 241)

This example illustrates the choices.



To set vertical justification for a table cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell that you want to edit.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click **Cell Properties** from the menu.



4. The Cell Properties dialog box appears. Click the down arrow to the right of the **Vertical Alignment** field.

50%
<ul> <li><u>N</u>ot Specified</li> <li>Percent</li> </ul>
O Pixels
<b>•</b>

5. Click your choice from the list and click **OK**.

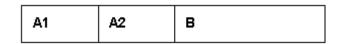
### Splitting a Cell

You can divide a cell into two. If you split a cell, each cell occupies one half the size of the original cell.

#### Row before split



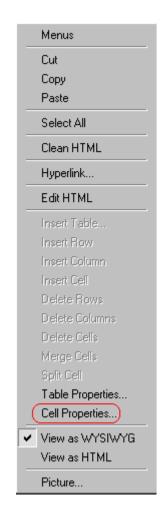
#### Row after split



To split a table cell into two cells, follow these steps.

1. Place the cursor in the cell that you want to split.

- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Split Cell from the menu.



4. Two cells now appear where only one appeared before.

### Merging Two Cells

You can merge two cells into one. If you merge two cells, the new cell contains all of the information from both. The new cell's width equals the sum of the two cells that were merged.

#### Cells Before Merge

А	В
---	---

#### **Cell After Merge**

AB

To merge two or more cells, follow these steps.

- 1. Select the cells that you want to merge.
- 2. Click the Insert Table button (I).
- 3. Click Merge Cells from the menu.

### Word Wrap

Word Wrap is a text formatting feature of tables. It causes text to move down to the next line when the width of the characters on a line equals the column width. For example, if you set column width to 50%, with word wrap turned on, a table looks like this.

Horizontal Alignment	Sets the horizontal position of the entire table. For example, left, center, right.
Border Color	Sets the color of the table borders unless Use Default Color is checked.

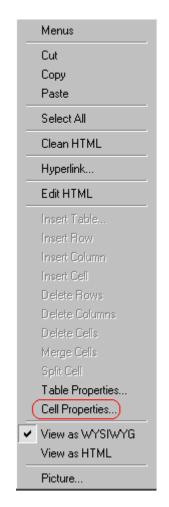
If you turn Word Wrap off for the same table, you get this result.

Horizontal Alignment	Sets the horizontal position of the entire table. For example, left, center
Border Color	Sets the color of the table borders unless Use Default Color is checke
	If Word Wrap is turned off, text stays on one line until the user entering table text presses <enter>. That keystroke causes text to move down to the next line.</enter>

By default, all cells have the Word Wrap feature turned on.

To turn Word Wrap on or off for a cell, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor in the cell that you want to edit.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click Cell Properties from the menu.



4. The Cell Properties dialog box appears. Click or off the **Word Wrap** checkbox and click **OK**.

C	Cell Properties		
	Span		
	<u>R</u> ows Spanned:		
	<u>C</u> olumns Spanned:		
	- Layout		
	<u>₩</u> idth:		
	Wor <u>d</u> Wrap		

### Setting Cell Padding and Spacing

Cell *padding* is the space between a cell's data and its border.



Cell spacing is the space between a cell and surrounding cells.

er wiaun.	
1	
+	
ie entire	

#### **Assigning Cell Padding**

To assign cell padding to your table, click the **Cell Padding** field on the Insert Table dialog box. Enter the number of pixels.

Borders	
Use Default Color	
B <u>o</u> rder Color:	
<u>B</u> order Size:	5
Cell <u>P</u> adding:	5
Cell <u>S</u> pacing:	5

### **Assigning Cell Spacing**

To assign cell spacing to your table, click the **Cell Spacing** field on the Insert Table dialog box. Enter the number of pixels.

Borders	
Use Default Color	
B <u>o</u> rder Color:	
<u>B</u> order Size:	5
Cell <u>P</u> adding:	5
Cell <u>S</u> pacing:	5

## **Using Bookmarks**

Use a bookmark to let a user "jump" from any word, phrase, or image to another place in a file. On your Web page, text appears in a different color to indicate that additional information is available at the bookmark's location.

For example, if your Web page includes meeting minutes, the top of the page could list the meeting dates. You could then assign a hyperlink to each date and a bookmark to each set of minutes.

The user sees that a date is in a different color, so clicks the date to "jump" to the bookmark that marks the location of the meeting minutes.

"Creating a Bookmark" on page 333 describes how to set up a hyperlink to a bookmark within a file. You can also set up hyperlink to

- another Web page. This procedure is described in "Using Hyperlinks" on page 337.
- a bookmark within another Web page. This procedure is described in "Creating a Hyperlink to a Location Within a Web Page" on page 340.

This section explains

- Creating a Bookmark
- Changing the Destination Window

### Creating a Bookmark

When creating a bookmark, you must specify a

 source, the text or image that the user clicks to move to the bookmark • *bookmark*, the place to which the cursor jumps when the user clicks the source

To continue with the above example, a meeting date is the source, and the meeting minutes are the bookmark.

To create a bookmark, follow these steps.

- 1. Select the bookmark text or image.
- 2. Click the Bookmark button ( A.).
- The Bookmark dialog box appears. Enter the name of the bookmark. The bookmark can include the following non-alphabetic characters:; / ?: @ & = + \$, \_ . ! ~ \* ' ( ).

Bookmark		X
Bookmark name: October_2000_minute	ed	
	-1	
	(	
Add	<u>D</u> elete	<u>R</u> ename
<u>G</u> o to		Close

- 4. Click Add.
- 5. The editor screen returns. (The bookmark does not appear on the page.) Select the source text or image.
- 6. Click the Hyperlink button ( ).
- 7. The Hyperlink dialog box appears.
- 8. Click the down arrow to the right of the **Quick Link** field and click the bookmark you created in Step 3.

Нур	erlink		×
E H	yperlink Information		ОК
Ty	ир <u>е</u> :	http:	
Lin	nk:	http://	Cancel
<u>B</u> o	ookmark:		
Ī	ext:	onte	
Ta	arget <u>F</u> rame:	<b>•</b>	
Q	uick Link: (sel	ect link)	
	(this	ect link) page) October_2000_minutes page) Top	

9. If desired, you can use the **Target Frame** field to change the window in which the destination text appears. For details, see "Changing the Destination Window" on page 335.

If you leave the **Target Frame** field blank, the new window replaces the current window.

10. Click **OK**.

### Changing the Destination Window

While defining hypertext, you can use the **Target Frame** field on the Hyperlink dialog box to change the window in which the destination page appears.

Hyperlink		×
Hyperlink Information		
Тур <u>е</u> :	http:	ОК
Link:	http://	Cancel
<u>B</u> ookmark:		
<u>T</u> ext:		
Farget <u>F</u> rame:	·	
	New Window (blank) Same Window (self)	
Quick Link: (selec	Parent Window (_parent) t Browser Window (_top)	

The possible values that you can enter into the **Target Frame** field are explained below.

If you want the destination page to appear	Click this in the Target Frame field
In a new browser window, on top of the current browser.	New Window(_blank)
In the same position within the browser window. The new window replaces the current one.	Same Window(_self) Note: this is the default.
If your page contains frames, in the frame that contains the frame with the hyperlink.	Parent Window(_parent)
If your page contains frames, in the full display area, replacing the frames.	Browser Window(_top)
If your page contains frames, in the frame with the specified name.	Enter the name of the frame.

# **Using Hyperlinks**

Use hyperlinks to let a user "jump" from any word, phrase or image to another Web page. The page can be within your network (that is, on an intranet) or anywhere on the internet.

#### **NOTE** If you want to create jumps within a file, see "Using Bookmarks" on page 333.

For example, if your Web page includes a jump to the Ektron Web site, you would enter the text to indicate the jump (for example **Ektron Web Site**), then create a hyperlink to www.ektron.com. When users see **Ektron Web Site** in a different color, they can click the text to "jump" to the site.

Although most jumps go to the top of another Web page, you can also jump to a bookmark within a Web page.

#### This section explains

- Creating a Hyperlink
- Testing a Hyperlink
- Creating a Hyperlink to a Location within a Web Page
- Editing a Hyperlink
- Removing a Hyperlink
- Preventing a URL from Becoming a Hyperlink

### Creating a Hyperlink

When creating a hyperlink, you must specify a

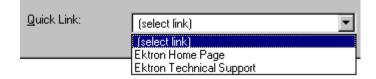
- source, the text or image the user clicks to move to the destination
- *destination*, the Web page to which the display moves when the user clicks the source

To continue with the above example, Ektron Web Site is the source, and the Web page available at www.ektron.com is the destination.

To create a hyperlink, click the Hyperlink button (b). When you do, the Hyperlink dialog box appears. From there, you can select from a list of Web pages (also known as *Quick Links*). Or, if the page you are jumping to is not on the list, enter the url address of the destination Web page. Each choice is described below.

#### **Using a Quick Link**

Your Web master can add to the Hyperlink dialog box any number of Quick Links, that is, Web addresses that you can link to simply by selecting an item from a drop down menu.



Quick links are "quick" because you do not need to enter or know the url of the destination Web page -- your Web master has already stored that information for you.

To apply a Quick Link, follow these steps.

1. Select the source text or image.

2. Click the Hyperlink button ( ). The Hyperlink dialog box appears.

ŀ	lyperlink		×
	Hyperlink Information		
	Тур <u>е</u> :	http:	ОК
	Link:	http://	Cancel
	<u>B</u> ookmark:		
	<u>I</u> ext:		
	Target <u>F</u> rame:	<b>•</b>	
	Quick Link:	ct link)	

- 3. Click the down arrow to the right of the **Quick Links** field. A list of Web pages that your Web master has pre-loaded appears.
- 4. Click an item from the list to select it.
- If desired, you can use the Target Frame field to change the window in which the destination text appears. For details, see "Changing the Destination Window" on page 335.

If you leave the **Target Frame** field blank, the new window replaces the current window

6. Click **OK**.

#### **Entering a Hyperlink Manually**

To create a hyperlink, follow these steps.

1. Select the source text or image.

2. Click the New Hyperlink button (🔜). The Hyperlink dialog box appears.

ŀ	lyperlink		×
	Hyperlink Information		ОК
	Тур <u>е</u> :	http:	
	Link:	http://	Cancel
	<u>B</u> ookmark:		
	<u>I</u> ext:		
	Target <u>F</u> rame:	<b></b>	
	Quick Link: (sele	ct link)	

- 3. Click in the **Link** field after http://. Then, enter the address of the destination Web page. For example, to enter a hyperlink to the ektron Web site, enter www.ektron.com.
- If desired, you can use the Target Frame field to change the window in which the destination text appears. For details, see "Changing the Destination Window" on page 335.

If you leave the **Target Frame** field blank, the new window replaces the current window

5. Click OK.

### **Testing a Hyperlink**

Within the eWebeditPro+XML editor, you can test a hyperlink. To do this, double click it. That action launches the Web page assigned to the hyperlink.

# Creating a Hyperlink to a Location Within a Web Page

Sometimes, the destination Web page contains bookmarks, and you want to jump from your page to a bookmark on another page. (Bookmarks are described in "Using Bookmarks" on page 333.)

To create a hyperlink that jumps to another page's bookmark, follow these steps.

- 1. Go to the destination Web page.
- Click the bookmark that you want to jump to. For example, on the illustration below, the text **Benefits to Partners** jumps to a bookmark further down on the page.

#### PARTNER PROGRAM OVERVIEW

#### Welcome!

- Executive Summary\_\_\_\_\_
- <u>Ektron Partner Programs</u>
- <u>Benefits to Partners</u>
- <u>Ektron Products</u>
- Partners in Learning Program
  - 3. When you click the bookmark, its full address appears in your browser's address bar. This bookmark's address looks like this. http://www.ektron.com/single.cfm?doc\_id=35#Benefits2

Ektron Technology Partners

- Click the address bar. The address is selected. Press <Ctrl>+<C> to copy the address into the Windows clipboard.
- 5. Go to eWebeditPro+XML.
- 6. Select the text or image from which you want to jump to the bookmark.
- 7. Click the Hyperlink button (). The hyperlink dialog box appears.
- 8. Move the cursor to the Link field.
- Press <Ctrl>+<V> to paste the address you copied in Step 4 into the Link field.
- 10. Click **OK**.

### Editing a Hyperlink

If you need to change a hyperlink's destination Web page or target frame, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the Hyperlink button (🚵). The hyperlink dialog box appears.
- 2. Edit the Link or Target Frame field as needed.
- 3. Press OK.

### Removing a Hyperlink

If you want to remove the hyperlink from text or an image, select the text or image and press the Remove Hyperlink button (36).

### Preventing a URL from Becoming a Hyperlink

If you enter a URL or an email address into eWebeditPro+XML, it automatically becomes a hyperlink. To prevent this, enter an extra space in the URL or address.

For example, instead of entering **sales@ektron.com**, enter **sales**<br/>blank>@ektron.com.

# Working with HTML

eWebeditPro+XML creates pages for display on the World Wide Web or an intranet. These pages use HTML (hypertext markup language) to format text and images for display in a browser. You do not need to know HTML to use eWebeditPro+XML.

However, if you know HTML, you can view, insert or edit your Web page's HTML code.

### Viewing and Editing HTML

When you choose to view your page as HTML, the editor cleans the content using a method determined by your Webmaster. (For more information, see "Cleaning HTML" in the eWebeditPro+XML Developer's Reference Guide.)

To view your page's HTML, follow these steps.

1. Click the View as HTML button (<sup>1)</sup>), or right click the mouse and click **View as HTML** from the menu.

	Clean HTML
	Hyperlink
	Insert HTML
	View as WYSIWYG
(	View as HTML
	Pioturo

2. The HTML code appears. While viewing the code, you can edit it using editor functions such as Cut, Copy, Paste and Replace. To select all content, press <Ctrl>+<A>.

You can also set default values for the style, size and color in which the HTML appears. To do this, right click the mouse and click **Preferences**. When you do, a dialog box appears in which you can enter formatting information about the HTML code.

View Preferences		×
Font <u>C</u> olor:	Black	OK
Font <u>S</u> ize:	10	Cancel
Font <u>N</u> ame:	Courier	

These settings will be used whenever you view as HTML.

The settings are ignored when you view the page in WYSIWYG mode and when the user views the page.

 To return to normal view, click the View as WYSIWYG button (<sup>1</sup>) or right click the mouse and click View WYSIWYG.

#### Editing a Section of a Page

If you want to edit only a section of the HTML on your Web page, follow these steps.

- 1. Select the portion of your Web page that you want to edit.
- 2. Right click the mouse.
- 3. Click **Edit HTML** from the menu. The HTML code appears.
- 4. Edit the HTML code as desired.
- 5. Click OK.

### **Inserting HTML**

If you want to insert HTML code into your Web page, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor at the spot on the page where you want to insert the HTML.
- 2. Right click the mouse.

3. Click Insert HTML from the menu.

Cut Copy Paste
Select All
Hyperlink Picture
Clean HTML Code (Insert HTML) View as HTML

- 4. The Insert HTML dialog box appears. Paste or type your HTML code.
- 5. Click OK.

### Cleaning HTML

eWebeditPro+XML lets you "clean" the HTML code for your Web page. You would typically use this feature after entering HTML text or pasting HTML code into eWebeditPro+XML from another application.

The Clean HTML option removes unnecessary HTML tags, ensures that all tags begin and end properly, and maximizes the page for efficiency. As a result, the page should be error-free and load more quickly in a browser. Also, the appearance of clean HTML is more consistent when viewed in different browsers.

To clean your HTML, follow these steps.

1. Right click the mouse.

2. Click Clean HTML code from the menu.

Cut Copy Paste
Select All
Hyperlink Picture
Clean HTML Code) Insert HTML View as HTML

3. eWebeditPro+XML cleans your Web page's HTML content.

### Inserting Content from MS Office 2000

If you paste text into eWebeditPro+XML from a Microsoft Office 2000 application, such as Microsoft Word, the following window appears.



For best results, click Yes.

# Section 508 Compliance

This section explains how eWebeditPro+XML complies with Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act (a law enacted by the United States government that requires Federal agencies to make their electronic and information technology accessible to people with disabilities).

Specifically, this section explains how to

- move the cursor into the eWebeditPro+XML editor
- use eWebeditPro+XML without a mouse
- work with Section 508 tables

### Moving the Cursor into eWebeditPro+XML

#### **Using Internet Explorer**

If the eWebeditPro+XML editor is one of several fields on a page, and your browser is Internet Explorer, move to eWebeditPro+XML by pressing <Tab> until the cursor lands in the editor.

To move from the editor to the next field, press <Ctrl>+<Tab>.

#### **Using Netscape**

If the eWebeditPro+XML editor is one of several fields on a page, and your browser is Netscape, your Webmaster needs to create custom toolbar buttons that let you move into and out of the editor. (This procedure is described in the eWebeditPro+XML Developer's Reference Guide.)

### Using eWebeditPro+XML without a Mouse

As explained in "Customizing Your Toolbar" on page 207, the eWebeditPro+XML toolbar consists of one or more toolbar menus. Menus have buttons that you click with the mouse to perform actions, such as copying text.

This section explains how to perform those actions without using the mouse.

1. With the cursor in the eWebeditPro+XML editor, press the



2. A menu appears.

	Menus
	Cut
	Сору
	Paste
_	Paste Text
	Select All
	Clean HTML
	Hyperlink
	Insert HTML
~	View as WYSIWYG
_	View as HTML
	Picture
	Insert Custom Tag

3. Press the down arrow key  $(\downarrow)$ to select **Menus**. **Menus** becomes highlighted.



4. Press <Enter>. A new menu lists all toolbar menus available to you.

If your Webmaster has given you access to all standard toolbar menus, the menu looks like this.

Edit
View As
Paragraph Format
Format
Special Characters
Form Elements
Table
Position Objects
Text Direction
Customize

- 5. Press the down arrow key  $(\checkmark)$  to select the toolbar menu that has a button that you want to use.
- 6. A new menu appears, listing all options on the selected menu. The following menu displays what might appear if you select the Edit Menu. (Your Webmaster determines which menu options are available to you).

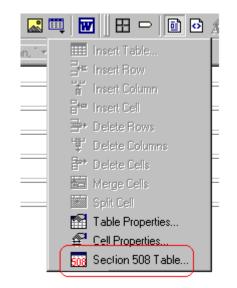
Cut
Сору
Paste
Paste Text
Replace
Find Next
Print
Undo
Redo
Check Spelling
Check Spelling As You Type
Bookmark
Hyperlink
Remove Link
HR
Picture
Table
Edit in Word

7. Press the down arrow key (↓) until the desired option is highlighted. Then, click the option to perform the action.

### Section 508 Tables

You cannot create Section 508 compliant tables using the standard Table Properties dialog box. Specifically, the dialog does not let you define a caption, summary, and table heading. To define these elements (needed for Section 508 compliant data tables), use the Section 508 Table option of the Table menu (illustrated below).

**WARNING!** The Section 508 Table Properties dialog only works with Internet Explorer version 5.0 or higher. It does not work with Netscape.



# **WARNING!** Even if you change no values on the screen, you *must* open this dialog box whenever you modify a table (for example, add a new row). The table's properties, required for Section 508, are generated when you click OK to close the dialog box.

To create a 508 compliant table, follow these steps.

- 1. Create a table, as explained in "Introduction to Tables" on page 280.
- Select the table by moving the cursor to a table border until you see a four headed arrow (illustrated below). When a table is selected, small squares surround it.

Employee Id	Department
1548	Marketing
1549	Human Resources
1550	Sales
1551	Administration

3. Click the Tables button (I) then select **Section 508 Table**.

4. The Section 508 Table Properties dialog box appears (illustrated below).

💈 Section 508 Table Properties - Microsoft Internet Explorer 💦 💶 💌				
Section 508 Table Propertie	S			
Heading Rows: Heading Columns:	0 (Max. 5) 0 (Max. 2)	OK Cancel		
Summary:				
Caption:				
		×		
Horizontal Caption Alignment: Vertical Caption Alignment:	Not Set ▼ Not Set ▼			

Respond to the fields in the dialog. They are described below.

Field	Description
Heading Rows	If you want your table to have a horizontal header, enter the number of rows that it should occupy.
	Beginning with the top, all cells in the specified number of rows are designated as table headers.
Heading Columns	If you want your table to have a header, enter the number of columns that it should occupy.
	Beginning with the left column, all cells in the specified number of columns are designated as table headers.
Summary	If desired, enter the table summary. Non-visual browsers can use the summary to explain the contents of the table.
Caption	If desired, enter the table caption. The caption appears centered below the table when viewed.

Field	Description
Horizontal Caption Alignment	If desired, enter the caption's horizontal alignment: <ul> <li>center</li> <li>left</li> <li>right</li> </ul>
Vertical Caption Alignment	If desired, enter the caption's vertical alignment: <ul> <li>bottom</li> <li>top</li> </ul>

After you complete the Table Properties dialog, click **OK** to make the table comply with Section 508.

# **Editing XML Web Pages**

**NOTE** This feature is only available with Ektron CMS300. If you are using CMS200 and want to upgrade to CMS300, please contact your Ektron sales representative at sales@ektron.com.

Your Web developers have a lot of flexibility in how they implement **eWebeditPro+XML**. As a result, this documentation cannot describe exactly how your system works.

This section explains the screens, menus and dialog boxes that you will likely encounter when working with **eWebeditPro+XML**.

This section describes the following topics.

- A Typical XML Screen
- Custom Tag Menu Options
- Inserting XML Tags
- The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog
- The Insert Custom Tag Dialog Box

### A Typical XML Screen

The following screen, a sample that Ektron provides with **eWebeditPro+XML**, has features that may appear within your browser. The screen consists of XML *tags* and fields into which you can insert *tag values*. (Tags are elements that collect XML content, such as **Author** and **Book Title** in the screen below.)

X 🖻 🛍 🛱 🗛 🗛 🎒 🗠 🗠 🖤	🎫   🗢 🍓 🍓   — 🔜 I		1000	
🔄 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 💌 T	imes New Roman, 💌 3 (12 pt)	• 🛕 🍇 В І Ц	nbsp © ®	тм€, г
vi estale a				•
x: catalog				
Book Section note: Ghost writer involved id	bk101	city: Fresno 💌	🗹 visible	
Author	Gambardella, Matthew			
status: student ▼ Book Title ▼ enabled				
localeRef:	XML Developer Guide			•

### **Types of Tags**

Here is some information about the types of tags that can appear on an **eWebeditPro+XML** screen.

- Some tags accept text, such as 
   Ote: Ghost writer involved
- Some tags accept a check mark if the condition is true, and no check mark if it is false. For example, Visible.
- Some tags provide a list of choices. To view the list, click the down arrow to the right of the tag (circled in the illustration below). Scroll through the list until you find the correct choice. Then, click it to enter it. For example:



These tags can provide a most likely "default" value, which is the value of the tag when you first see it.

### **Custom Tag Menu Options**

If you move the cursor to an area of the screen where you can insert XML tags and right click the mouse, three new menu options appear:

- Insert Custom Tag
- (tag name) Tag Attributes
- (tag name) Tag Properties

For example:

	- Sponnac.			
	Insert HTML			
~	View as WYSIWYG			
	View as HTML			
	Picture			
ſ	Insert Custom Tag			
	Book Section Tag Attributes			
l	Book Section Tag Properties			

The Insert Custom Tag option is explained in "Inserting XML Tags" on page 356.

The *(tag name)* Tag Attributes option is explained in "The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog" on page 358.

The *(tag name)* Tag Properties option is intended for developers, so is not explained in this documentation. This option is documented in the Developer's Reference Guide section "Custom XML Dialog Boxes."

### **Inserting XML Tags**

Some XML screens let you insert additional XML tags at certain locations. If you move the cursor to a location where you can insert

tags and right click the mouse, the **Insert Custom Tag** option appears.

_	- i y pominica.			
	Insert HTML			
~	View as WYSIWYG			
	View as HTML			
	Picture			
(	Insert Custom Tag)			
	Book Section Tag Attributes			
	Book Section Tag Properties			

When you click **Insert Custom Tag**, another menu appears. The top of the menu may list tags that can be inserted at your cursor's location, according to the XML schema or DTD being used. (A schema or DTD describes the hierarchy of tags in XML.) For example:

Author
Book Title
description
Insert Custom Tag

In the above illustration, the first three menu options (**Author**, **Book Title**, and **Description**) are tags that can be inserted. When you click a tag to insert it, the Custom Tag Attributes dialog box appears. For more information, see "The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog" on page 358.

After you finish working with the Custom Tag Attributes dialog box, the selected tag is inserted at the location of the cursor. Additional tags and/or attributes may be inserted at the same time if your developer has set up the selected tag to do so.

You may also be able to insert a tag whether or not it can be inserted at the cursor location. If you click **Insert Custom Tag** from the above menu and the following dialog box appears, you can insert any tag on the list.

Tags-		<u>I</u> nsert
× Cause	<u>N</u> ew	Cancel
Knowledge Base Article More Information	<u>D</u> elete	
References Resolution	Properties	
Summary Symptoms	Tisbergee	
This article applies to: Title:		
nice:		

### The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog

XML tags can have *attribute*s, which are used to further define an XML tag. For example (in which "importance" is the attribute):

<element importance="high">Text</element>

The Custom Tag Attributes dialog box appears when you

- insert a new tag, or
- place the cursor in an XML tag that does not show attributes, right click the mouse, and choose Custom Tag Attributes from the menu.

The dialog box allows you to

- view attributes that are assigned and that can be inserted
- remove assigned attributes
- add available attributes
- add new attributes
- enter or modify an attribute's value

Custom Tag Attributes		×
Used Attributes city id	<u>O</u> ffered Attributes <u>New</u> <u>&lt; Add</u> <u>Remove&gt;</u>	OK Cancel
Fresno	⊻alue	
Boston		
Fresno		
Dallas		
Chicago		

### **Removing an Attribute**

To remove an assigned attribute, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the attribute within the **<u>U</u>sed Attributes** column.
- Click <u>Remove --></u>.
- 3. Press **OK** to close the dialog box and remove the selected attribute.

#### **Inserting an Available Attribute**

To insert an attribute that can be inserted at the cursor location, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the attribute from the **Offered Attributes** column.
- Click <--<u>A</u>dd.
- 3. Press **OK** to close the dialog box and insert the attribute.

#### **Inserting a New Attribute**

To insert an attribute that does not appear in the Custom Tag Attributes dialog box, follow these steps.

- 1. Click <u>N</u>ew.
- 2. A new line is added to the top of the **Used Attributes** column to make room for the new attribute.
- 3. Enter the attribute into the new line (circled in the illustration below).

Custom Tag Attributes		×
Used Attributes	<u>O</u> ffered Attributes <u>N</u> ew enabled id localeRef req status	OK Cancel
	Value	

4. Press **OK** to close the dialog box and insert the attribute.

#### **Entering or Modifying an Attribute Value**

To modify or enter an attribute value, the attribute must be in the **<u>U</u>sed Attributes** column. To change or enter the value, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the attribute.
- 2. Change or enter the text in the **Value** field (circled in the illustration below).

Custom Tag Attributes			×
<u>U</u> sed Attributes	<u>O</u> ff	ered Attributes	ок
city id	<u>N</u> ew note visible		Cancel
Fresno	<b>•</b>	⊻alue	
Boston			
Fresno			
Dallas			
Chicago			

3. Press **OK** to close the dialog box and change the attribute value.

### The Insert Custom Tag Dialog Box

Use this dialog box to insert a custom tag that may or may not be available at the cursor location, according to the schema or DTD.

Νοτε

Because the Properties button on this dialog box is intended for developers, it is not explained in this documentation. The Custom Tag Properties dialog box is documented in the Developer Reference Guide section "Custom XML Dialog Boxes."

s <mark>ert Custom Tag</mark> <u>T</u> ags		Insert
* Cause	New	Cancel
Knowledge Base Article More Information	Delete	
References Resolution Summary	Properties	
Symptoms This article applies to: Title:		
nae.		

### Inserting an Available Tag

To insert any tag from the current schema or DTD, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the tag from the Tags column.
- 2. Click Insert.
- 3. The Custom Tag Attributes dialog appears. To learn how to use that, see "The Custom Tag Attributes Dialog" on page 358.

#### **Inserting a New Tag**

To insert a new tag, follow these steps.

- 1. Click <u>New</u>.
- 2. A new line is added to the top of the **Tags** column to make room for the new attribute.

Insert Custom Tag		×
		<u>I</u> nsert
Author	<u>N</u> ew	Cancel
Book Section Book Title	<u>D</u> elete	
Catalog Listing description	Properties	
Main Character Place Name	Toheiges	
x: catalog		

- 3. Enter the attribute into the new line (circled in the illustration above).
- 4. Press **Insert** to close the dialog box and insert the tag.
- **NOTE** If you insert some new tags to this screen and then decide you do not want to insert one of them, click the unwanted tag and press the <u>Delete</u> button to remove it from the list.

# Using the Data Designer

**NOTE** This feature is only available with Ektron CMS300. If you are using CMS200 and want to upgrade to CMS300, please contact your Ektron sales representative at sales@ektron.com.

### Introduction

**eWebeditPro+XML**'s Data Designer feature lets you design a screen that collects information from users and stores it as XML data. Creating the screen is simple and requires no knowledge of XML.

**NOTE** When using the Data Designer feature, the following browsers are supported: Netscape 6.2 or later; Internet Explorer 5.5 or later.

For example, you may create the following screen.

🛛 👗 🖻 🛍 🛱 🚧	🏘 🎒 🗠 🖙 💖 🏨 🕕 🍓 🍪 🗕 🔜 🖽 🚯
📗 🛃 (Apply Style)	▼ Normal ▼ Arial, Helvetica ▼ 2 (10 pt) ▼ <b>III nbsp</b>
🛛 🖾 💌 🖬 🖬 🗄	; 📰 📼 🖹 🖳 🖆 🕼
⊢ Address Street:	
City:	State Massachusetts 💌
City:	State Massachusetts  This screen can store information entered by a user as the following XML.

Note that the street and city fields accept text, while the state field accepts a pre-defined value (a state).

**NOTE** The samples installed with **eWebeditPro+XML** provide a good example of using the Data Designer. To try them out, click the Windows Start button (lower left corner of the screen) and follow this path: **Start > Programs > Ektron > eWebEditPro4 > Samples > ASP > Data Design > ASP Data Design Sample**.

This section explains how to use the Data Designer feature through the following topics.

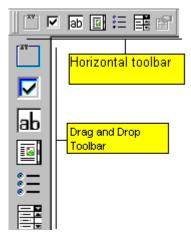
- "Differences in eWebeditPro+XML" on page 364
- "Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode" on page 366
- "Designing a Screen" on page 366
- "Inserting a Field Type" on page 367
- "Sample Screen Design" on page 369
- "Data Designer Field Types" on page 375

### Differences in eWebeditPro+XML

When you use the Data Designer, **eWebeditPro+XML** changes in the following ways.

**NOTE** The design toolbar and the design mode and Data Entry mode buttons appear only if your site administrator has defined them in the configuration data.

 two toolbars appear, illustrated below. The toolbar buttons let you design the data entry screen. Each button represents a different kind of field.

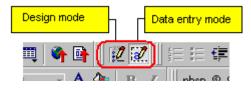


Both toolbars provide mostly the same buttons. The major difference between them is how you use the button to add a field to the screen. If you are using the *horizontal* toolbar, place the cursor where you want field, and click the toolbar button.

When using the *drag and drop toolbar*, drag a button to desired screen location.

Note that a context-sensitive menu, available by right clicking the mouse, is also available to perform the commands. You can right click the mouse then select **Insert Field** to display a context-sensitive menu of all commands. To edit the properties of any field already on the screen, select the field, right click the mouse, and select **Field Properties**.

 two buttons appear on the regular (Edit) toolbar: Design mode and Data Entry mode. (For more information, see "Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode" on page 366.)



The Data Entry mode button lets you preview the screen being created.

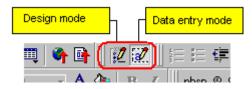
• several regular toolbar buttons are grayed out because they do not work with Data Designer

### Design Mode vs. Data Entry Mode

The Data Designer feature supplies two "modes," which make it easier for you to design screens:

- Data Design mode lets you insert and remove fields from the data entry screen
- Data Entry mode simulates the screen's appearance during data entry

Two toolbar buttons let you switch between modes. The buttons are located on the Edit toolbar.



When you begin to create a data entry screen, you are in design mode. To test the screen as the user will see it, click the Data Entry button ( $\mathbb{Z}$ ). To switch back to Data Entry mode and modify the data entry screen, click the Data Designer button ( $\mathbb{Z}$ ).

### **Designing a Screen**

To design a screen that captures XML data, you

- Ask your system administrator to enable a version of eWebeditPro+XML that includes the Data Designer. (The administrator should refer to the Data Designer chapter of the Developer's Reference Guide.)
- 2. For each field on the screen, select a field type, and place it on the screen. "Inserting a Field Type" on page 367 explains the kind of field that each button represents.

You can also use **eWebeditPro+XML**'s rich formatting capabilities to design the screen. For example, you can format text, and use tables, images and hyperlinks to guide the user through the data entry process. Below is a sample screen created with the Data Designer.

🖻 🛍 🛱 🖊	🕰 🎒 🗠 🖂	🚏 🖦 🗊 😵 🖊	) 🚷 🍓 🗕 –	🛃 🧮 🗳 📑	≔ ≔ 🗭 🗰	
(Apply Style)	▼ Normal	👻 Arial, Helvetica	▼ 2 (10 pt)	- 🗛 🍇 🖪	$I \subseteq \mathbf{U} \setminus \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{x}^2$	∬ nbsp © ® TM € <sub>t</sub> i

sic Information tures of Property:



#### cription:

floor unit w/ balcony and one deeded garage space and central air

_S# 31710	#Bedrooms: 2	#Full Baths: 1	#Half B
ar Built:	Lot Size (Sq Ft):	Interior Size (Sq Ft): 928	Last Ye

### Inserting a Field Type

**eWebeditPro+XML** provides several options that let you insert or edit fields in the editor. Each field type is described below.

Field type	Butto n	Description	For more information, see
Group Box	abc XY2L B	Groups related fields, which can be surrounded by a box and have a caption	"Group Box ()" on page 375

Field type	Butto n	Description	For more information, see
Checkbox	ব	User's response is either checked or unchecked	"Checkbox ()" on page 378
Plain Text	ab	Free text field; user cannot format text	"Plain Text()" on page 379
Rich Area		Free text field; user can format text using the editor	"Rich Area ()" on page 384
Choices	*    *    *	Several choices appear on screen. User checks appropriate boxes. All user choices are inserted as values within single XML tag.	"Choices ()" on page 386
List		Same as Choices except options appear in a drop-down box	"Select List ()" on page 389
Calculated		Performs calculations using other fields on the screen	"Calculated Field ()" on page 391
Calendar		Lets user insert a date by clicking a calendar	"Calendar Field ()" on page 401
Image Only	*	Lets user insert an image	"Image Only Field ()" on page 403
File Link	ļ,	Lets user insert a link to a file, such as a PDF document	"File Link Field ()" on page 405
Field Properties	ř	Lets you change the properties of any field. Select the field then click this button.	
		This option is also available on the right click menu, but not available on the drag and drop toolbar	

### Deleting a Field from the Screen

To remove a field from the screen, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to the field.
- 2. When the cursor changes to a four-headed arrow, click the mouse.
- 3. Small boxes surround the field.



4. Click the cut button  $(\overset{\star}{\mathbb{A}})$  to remove the field.

Usually, the field label is not deleted when you delete a field. To delete the label, use standard **eWebeditPro+XML** editing buttons.

### Sample Screen Design

This section provides a brief overview of designing a screen, so that you can learn how the pieces fit together. Let's assume you want the screen to look like this.

🛛 👗 🖻 🛍 🛱 🖊	L 😂 🗠 🗠 💖 😐 🕕 🍓 🍓 🗕 — 🔜 🕮 🗳 📑
📗 🛃 (Apply Style)	💌 Normal 🔍 Arial, Helvetica 👻 2 (10 pt) 👻 📗 nbst
📗 🖾 💌 🖬 👘 🗄	
Address	
Street:	
City:	State Massachusetts 💌

NOTE The following example helps you understand how to create a simple data entry screen. It does not explain how to save a screen so that a user can enter data into it. You can access a good sample by navigating to Start > Programs > Ektron > eWebEditPro > Samples > ASP > Data Design > ASP Data Design Sample. When you are ready to create an actual screen, ask your system administrator to help determine a method for saving the screen and making it available to users for data entry.

To create such a screen, follow these steps.

- Sign on to eWebeditPro+XML in Data Designer mode. (Ask your system administrator how to do this. The Developer's Reference Guide (version 4.0 and higher) provides details.)
- 2. Since you want to surround the data entry fields with a box and

a caption, drag the Group Box button  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \frac{|a|c}{|a|c|} \\ \frac{|a|c|}{|a|c|} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  from the drag and drop toolbar onto the screen. Then, complete the dialog as shown below.

Nam <u>e</u> :	Address		
Display name:	Address		
Use		Allow	
May not be removed			
C May be removed		C More than one	
Appearance			
◯ <u>N</u> o border			
Show border and capting	on		
<u>C</u> aption:	Address		
		OK	Cancel

**NOTE** Later in the section, documentation is supplied for each field on the dialog box. Since this section is providing an overview, it does not delve into those details.

At this point, the screen looks like this.

<b>%</b>	• • <b>•</b> •	🐴 🎒 🗠	CAL 🕵 WES	/> 🐁 🎭	- 🔜 📖	ବ 🖻	22 🛛	
🛃	(Apply Style)	<ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Times</li> </ul>	New Roman, 1	• 3 (12 pt)	- 🗛 🔅	nbsp ©	® TM € <sub>t</sub> i •
<b>∐</b> [ <sup>xv</sup> ]	🗹 🖬 🗾 \Xi	<b>F</b>						
XV	Address -							<u> </u>
ab								
ŧΞ								

3. Select Address then apply bold and the custom color shown above. Now the screen looks like this.

<b>%</b>	🖻 🔁 🛱 🖊	n 🐴 🎒 🗠 🗠	- 😽 🕵 🖊 🍓 🤅	臱   — 🔜 🕮	🗳 📑 👔	2 🗷 🛛 🗄 🗄	
🛃	(Apply Style)	<ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Times New Roma</li> </ul>	n, 1 🔹 3 (12 pt)	- 🗛 🚱	nbsp © ® TM	€, i •
<b>∐ [</b> <sup>x</sup> <sup>y</sup> ]	💌  ab 🔟 🗄	: 📑 🖻					
[XY-]							<u></u>
	Address						
ab							
:=							
-							
	4	. The next	field, street, sh	ould let the	user ente	er text. So,	drag

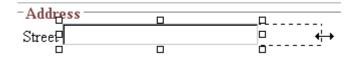
the plain text field button (ab) into the space below **Address**. Then, complete the dialog as shown below.

Plain Text Field		×
Name: ( <u>2)</u>	Street	Indexed
Djsplay name:	Street	
D <u>e</u> fault value:		
		Allow
May not be remov	ed	<ul> <li>Only one</li> </ul>
C May be removed		C More than one
Options		Validation
<u> </u>		⊻alidation
🗖 <u>R</u> ead Only		No validation
☐ <u>H</u> idden		<u>C</u> ustom Validation
Caption:	Street	
		OK Cancel

Now, the screen looks like this.

<b>%</b>	à 🔒 🔓 🖊	A, 🎒 🗠	🕶 💙 ebs	/> 🝓 🎭	- 🔜 🖽	ବ 📑 📗	🕺 🔣 📗 🗄	∃⊈≣
🛃	(Apply Style)	<ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul>	▼ Time	s New Roman, 1 •	• 3 (12 pt)	- 🗛 🔌	📗 nbsp 🐵 👁	тм € <sub>т</sub> і т
<b>XY</b>	🗹  ab 🗾 🗄	<b>R</b> 6						
[XY]								<u> </u>
	Address							
	Street							
ab								
:=								

Note that the **Street** field is not wide enough. To widen it, click the field, move the cursor until you see a two-sided arrow, and drag the arrow to the right.



5. The next field, City, should also let the user enter text. Assume that you want City to appear in the line below Street. To make room for City, move the cursor to the end of the Street field and press <Enter> to create a new line. Next, drag the plain

text field button (|ab|) into the line below **Street**. Then, complete the dialog as shown below.

Plain Text Field				×
Name: ( <u>2)</u>	City		🗖 Ing	dexed
Dįsplay name:	City			
D <u>e</u> fault value:				
11			A.H	
Use	ed		Allow • Only one	
C May be removed			C More than or	
O May be removed				
- Options		-Validation-		
<u> </u>		Validation		
🗖 <u>R</u> ead Only		No valida	ation	•
☐ <u>H</u> idden			<u>C</u> ustom Va	alidation
Caption:	City			
			OK	Cancel

Now, the screen looks like this.

8	�� 🏝 🖀 桷 桷 🥔 🗢 ♀   粆 🚥 🕕 🍓 🎭   ー 🔜 팩   🌳 📑 📝 🔣   三 日 伊 伊	:
🛃	(Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 🔹 Times New Roman, 💽 3 (12 pt) 🔹 🗛 💁 📗 nbsp © ® TM € j	¥
[[ [ <sup>xv</sup> ]		

 The next field, State, should let the user choose from several states. Assume that you want the state to appear to the right of City. Move the cursor to the end of the City field and drag the

Select List Field field button () into that space. Then, complete the dialog as shown below.

Select List Field		
Name: ( <u>2)</u>	State 🗖 I <u>n</u> dexed	
It <u>e</u> m List	Item	
MA] Massachus	tts ⊻alue MA	
□ [VT] Vermont □ [NY] New York		
	Add Change	
Move Up	Move Down Remove	1
	OK Cance	

**NOTE** The above screen has three selection items. However, there is no limit to the number of items you can enter.

Now, the screen looks like this.

3 �� 🛍 🛍 🐴 🥔 🗠 🔍 💖 🐽 🥕 🍓 🍓   - 🔜 🖽 🖣 📑 🔢 💯 🔣    註 註 倖 倖
🛛 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 Normal 🔹 Times New Roman, 💌 3 (12 pt) 📼 🗛 🌆 🛛 nbsp 👁 🕅 🗲 j
Address Street City State MA
The above example is very simple and does not use some of the

The above example is very simple and does not use some of the Data Designer's more powerful and flexible features. To learn more about Data Designer, read the rest of this chapter.

### Data Designer Field Types

To help you use all of the Data Designer's capabilities, this section explains each field type you can insert. As you will see, they are very flexible and should accommodate all of your needs when designing a data entry screen.



A Group Box field lets you group related fields together on a screen by surrounding them with a box and optionally placing a caption above them.

After you insert a Group Box field, to insert other kinds of fields within the box,

 drag the fields into the box (if you are using the drag and drop toolbar)

or

 place the cursor inside the box then select a field type button (if you are using the horizontal toolbar)

#### Advantages of Grouping Fields

An advantage of grouping fields is that you can allow the user in Data Entry mode to add groups as needed. For example, if a screen collects several fields of information about each telephone call, the user could simply click the **Insert Below** button to insert a new group of fields, ready to collect information about the next call.



#### **Dialog Box**

		×
Address		
Address		
	Allow	
50		
	C More than one	
aption		
Address		
	ОК	Cancel
	Address	Address Allow  Duly one  More than one Address

Fields on the Group Box Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of this field.
	Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;'"{}[]\`~) into this field.
	The Name Field's Default Value
	By default, the Data Designer assigns a name made up of <b>Field</b> followed by the next available number. So, the first field's default name is <b>Field1</b> , the second field's default name is <b>Field2</b> , etc. You can change the default if you want.
Display Name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.
Use	See "The Use Field" on page 407
Allow	See "The Allow Field" on page 408
Appearance	Click <b>Show border and caption</b> if you want to surround the fields in this group with a box. You can also create a caption to appear in the top line of the box.
	Click <b>No border</b> if you do not want to surround the fields in this group with a box.
Caption	If desired, enter text to describe this group of fields on the data entry screen. For example
	Address
	After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
	Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Group Box field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.

# Checkbox (

A Checkbox field is only one character wide and accepts one of two possible values: checked or unchecked. For example

🗖 Check if you are over 65

**Dialog Box** 

Checkbox Field	×
N <u>a</u> me:	□ I <u>n</u> dexed
<u>D</u> isplay name:	
Default value:	
C <u>I</u> rue (checked)	
Ealse (unchecked)	
<u>Caption:</u>	
	OK Cancel

Fields on the Checkbox Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;"'{}[] '~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide. The <b>Indexed</b> field may not appear, depending on how your administrator set up your system.

Description
Enter text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field (circled in red below).
🗖 Check if you are over 65
over 65?
If you want this field to be checked when the screen first appears, click <b>True</b> .
Otherwise, click <b>False</b> .
Enter text to guide the user's response to this field. To continue the above example, the caption would be <b>Check if you are over 65</b> .
After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Check Box field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.



Use a plain text field when you want the user to enter an unformatted, free text response.

**NOTE** If a plain text field tries to perform a numerical calculation with a value that is blank or contains letters, NaN appears in the field. (NaN stands for "not a number.") If a plain text field tries to divide by zero, Infinity appears.

#### Plain Text Field vs. Rich Area Field

The following capabilities are available with a plain text field but not a rich area field.

- You can validate the user response. For more information, see "Validation" on page 383.
- You can adjust the field's width by dragging it. See "Resizing a Plain Text Field" on page 384.
- The text can be read-only or hidden

The following capability is available with a rich area field but not a plain text field.

- In Data Entry mode, the user can change the text's format, size, style, etc. along with adding hyperlinks, using eWebeditPro+XML's formatting capabilities.
- You can enter custom tags.

#### **Dialog Box**

<u>N</u> ame:	Field1		🗖 Indexa	ed
Display name:	Field 1			
D <u>e</u> fault value:				
- Use			Allow	
May not be rer	noved			
C May <u>b</u> e remov	ed		C More than one	
- Options		-Validation-		
🔲 Allow multiple lin	es	V <u>a</u> lidation		
🗖 In <u>v</u> isible		No valida	ation	
Canno <u>t</u> be chan	ged		C <u>u</u> stom Valida	ation
<u>Caption:</u>	Text			
			ок	Cance

#### Fields on the Plain Text Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of this field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;"{}[]\\`~) into this field. <i>See Also:</i> "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide. The <b>Indexed</b> field may not appear, depending on how your administrator set up your system.
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.
Default Value	If you want to set a default value for this field, enter that value here. The default value appears in Data Entry mode, where the user can accept, change, or delete it. For example, if this field collects a city, and most users enter New York, enter New York as the value.
Use	See "The Use Field" on page 407
Allow	See "The Allow Field" on page 408

Field	Description
Options	Allow multiple lines - Check here to let this text box expand to accommodate the user's input.
	If you do not check this box, a single line input box appears on the data entry screen to accept user input.
	Invisible - Check here to make this field hidden in Data Entry mode.
	This option lets you store unseen information in each XML document. An example might be putting a version number for the data design so that XML documents can be upgraded to newer versions using an XSL transform.
	A field can be either invisible or cannot be changed - - it cannot be both.
	<b>Cannot be changed</b> - Check here to make this field read-only. That is, the user cannot insert data into it in Data Entry mode.
	You might use this option to provide user instructions for completing the screen.

Field	Description	
Validation	Select the kind of validation to apply to this field. Your choices are:	
	• No validation - the user's response is not checked	
	• Cannot be blank - the user must enter a response	
	<ul> <li>Non-negative whole number or blank - the user must enter a positive whole number or no response</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Non-negative whole number (required) - the user must enter a positive whole number</li> </ul>	
	• <b>Decimal number or blank</b> - must be a decimal number (for example, 12.345 or 12) or blank. A leading minus sign "-" is allowed. The decimal point must be a period (.), even in locales that normally use a comma (,).	
	Decimal numbers include whole numbers because the decimal point is implied. That is, 12 is 12.0000.	
	<ul> <li>Decimal number required - must be a decimal number (it cannot be blank) of none, one, or two decimal places.</li> <li>A leading minus sign "-" is allowed. The decimal point must be period (.), even in locales that</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>normally use a comma (,).</li> <li>Percent: (0-100) required - the user must enter a whole number from 0 to 100</li> </ul>	
	• Zip code (US only) - the user's response must consist of 5 ( <i>nnnn</i> ) or 9 digits separated by a dash after the fifth ( <i>nnnn-nnn</i> )	
	• Social Security number (US only) - the user's response must consist of nine digits in this pattern: nnn-nn-nnnn	
	• <b>Custom -</b> You can create custom validation.	
	For more information, see "Custom Validation" on page 409.	
	If you assign to this field any value other than <b>No</b> <b>validation</b> , the field is initially surrounded by red dashes in Data Entry mode. If the user's response does not meet the validation criterion, the field remains surrounded by red dashes. The system administrator determines whether or not the user can save an invalid document.	

Field	Description
Caption	Enter text to describe this field on the data entry screen. It appears to the left of the field.
	After you insert this field, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
	Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Plain Text field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.

#### Resizing a Plain Text Field

If you insert a plain text field and its width is too small or too large, you can easily resize it. To do so, follow these steps.

- 1. Place the cursor over the field and click. The cursor changes to a four-headed arrow, and small boxes surround the field.
- 2. Move the cursor to the far right of the field. (See illustration below). The cursor turns into a two-headed arrow.

A 33	
Address -	<b>—</b>
StreeP	□
	0

3. Drag the arrow to adjust the field width as desired.

## Rich Area (💷)

Use a rich area field to let a user enter a free text response that can be formatted using the editor buttons.

See Also: "Plain Text Field vs. Rich Area Field" on page 379

**TIP!** Unlike many other fields, the Rich Area dialog box does not prompt for a field caption. You can still enter text describing the field on the editor screen before or after you insert a Rich Area field.

#### Adjusting the Width of a Rich Area Field

Note that, unlike a plain text field, the width of a rich area field cannot be adjusted. It occupies the entire screen width. If a user enters more text than fits on one line, the rich area field automatically adds more lines. To limit the width of a rich area field, place it in a table cell. In this case, the field is as wide as the cell.

If you want to insert default text into a rich area field, insert it after you place the field in the editor.

#### **Dialog Box**

Rich Area Field		×
Nam <u>e</u> :	Field6	□ I <u>n</u> dexed
Display name:	Field 6	
Use		Allow
May not be removed		Only one
○ <u>M</u> ay be removed		C More than one
		OK Cancel

#### Fields on the Rich Area Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;"'{}[]\[`~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide. The <b>Indexed</b> field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator set up your system.

Field	Description
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.
Use	See "The Use Field" on page 407
Allow	See "The Allow Field" on page 408

# Choices (=)

Use the Choices field when you want to give the data entry user several choices. For example, you could create a Choices field named **Interests** that lists these options.

- music
- art
- sports

The data entry user could check the first two and leave the third blank.

### Choices Field vs. Select List Field

The following capabilities are available with a Choices field but not a Select List field.

- You can limit the user's choice to one item or many.
- All items appear on the screen, arranged horizontally or vertically

The following capabilities are available with a Select List field but not a Choices field.

- The user can only select one item.
- Only the default item appears on the screen. To the right of the field, a black down arrow appears (circled in red below). The user must click the arrow to display all items and select one.



## **Dialog Box**

Choices Field		
<u>N</u> ame:	Field2	🗖 In <u>d</u> exed
Di <u>s</u> play name:	Field 2	
Allow selection	A	ppearance
		<ul> <li>Vertical List</li> </ul>
C More t <u>h</u> an one		C Horizontal List
I <u>t</u> em List	Item	
	<u>V</u> alue	1
	Caption:	Value 1
	_	
		<u>A</u> dd <u>C</u> hange
	[	
Check item to be selected by	derault.	
<u>М</u> оve Up	Mov <u>e</u> Do	wn <u>B</u> emove
		OK Cancel

Fields on the Choices Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special
	characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;"{}[]\ `~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377

Field	Description
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide.
	The <b>Indexed</b> field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator set up your system.
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this choice list.
Allow selection	Click <b>More than one</b> to allow the data entry user to select more than one item on the data entry screen. Otherwise, click <b>Only one</b> .
	For example, if you click <b>More than one</b> , and the choices are: music, art, sports, the user could select all three choices.
	If you click <b>Only one</b> , the user could only select one choice.
Appearance	Click Vertical List to arrange the choices vertically.
	Click Horizontal List to arrange the choices horizontally.

Field	Description		
Item List	This section of the screen displays the items that you enter in the <b>Value</b> and <b>Text</b> fields.		
	Buttons near the bottom of the screen let you remove items from this list as well as rearrange them.		
	Move Up Mov <u>e</u> Down <u>R</u> emove		
	Place a check in the box of any item to be checked by default on the data entry screen. If you do, the user can accept the default or uncheck the item by clicking in the checkbox. Note that if <b>Only One</b> is selected under <b>Allow selection</b> (above), only one item can be selected.		
Value	Enter the value that is collected when the data entry user selects this item. For example, if <b>Interests</b> appears in the Name field, and you want music to be collected when the data entry user selects this item and saves the page, enter <b>music</b> here.		
Caption	Enter text to describe this item on the data entry screen. After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.		
	Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Choices field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.		



A Select List field is similar to a Choices field. The biggest difference is that the responses appear in a drop-down box instead of being listed separately. To see the choices, click the down arrow on the right side of the box (circled below).

See Also: "Choices Field vs. Select List Field" on page 386

For example:

🛛 😅 🖬 👗 🖬 🛍 🛱	M 🖪 🎒
📗 🛃 (Apply Style) 🔹 💌	Normal
Select areas of interest:	
	music
	art
	sports

## **Dialog Box**

Select List Field	×
Name: Field.	indexed
It <u>e</u> m List	Item
	⊻alue 1
	Iext Value 1
	Add Change
Check Item to be selected by	default.
Move Up	M <u>o</u> ve Down <u>R</u> emove
Caption: Text:	
	OK Cancel

## Fields on the Select List Field Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;'"{}[]\`~) into this field. <i>See Also</i> : "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377

Field	Description
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide.
	The <b>Indexed</b> field may not appear, depending on how your administrator has set up your system.
Item List	This section of the screen displays the items that you enter in the <b>Value</b> and <b>Text</b> fields.
	Buttons let you remove items from this list as well as rearrange them.
	Place a check in the box of any item to be checked by default on the data entry screen. If you do, the user can accept the default or uncheck the item by clicking in the checkbox.
Value	Enter the value that is collected when the data entry user selects this item.
	For example, if <b>Interests</b> appears in the Name field, and you want music to be collected when the data entry user selects this item and saves the page, enter <b>music</b> here.
Text	Enter text to describe this item on the data entry screen.
	After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
Caption	Enter text to guide the user's selection. For example, if the user needs to select an area of interest, the caption could be <b>Choose your interests</b> .
	Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Select List field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.



Use a calculated field to perform a calculation based on values in other fields. For example, if your screen collects mortgage information, you could create one field to collect the mortgage and interest payment and another to collect taxes and insurance. The calculated field could sum those two numbers and display the monthly payment.

You can validate a calculated field. For example, you can require a positive number between 100 and 1,000.

Calculated fields are display only -- users cannot edit them.

**IMPORTANT!** If a field will be referenced in a calculation, use the validation feature to require a value for that field. This forces the user to enter a number to be used in the calculation.

### Dialog Box

Calculated Field		
<u>N</u> ame:		🗖 In <u>d</u> exed
Djsplay name:		
Calculation		
<u>F</u> ormula:		
<u>E</u> xamples		<u>S</u> elect Field
		<b>•</b>
Validation		
⊻alidation	No validation	<b>•</b>
		Custom Validation
<u>Caption:</u>	Text:	
		OK Cancel

Fields on the Calculated Field Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;"{}[[\]`~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide. The <b>Indexed</b> field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator has set up your system.
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.
Calculation	Use this area of the screen to define the calculation that this field will perform.
Formula	Enter the calculation that this field will perform. See Also: "Using the Formula Field" on page 394
Select Field	Click this button to select a field to reference in the calculation. For more information, see "Using the Formula Field" on page 394.
Examples	Click the down arrow to the right of this field to see examples of calculations you can perform. When you select an example, it is copied into the <b>Formula</b> field.
	Your system administrator can customize the examples. Instructions are provided in "The <cmddsgcalc> Command" in the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide.</cmddsgcalc>
	See Also: "Explanation of Examples" on page 396

Field	Description
Validation	Select the kind of validation to apply to this field. Your choices are:
	• No validation - the user's response is not checked
	• Non-negative number (required) - the result of the calculation must be a positive number
	<ul> <li>Custom - You can create custom validation. For more information, see "Custom Validation" on page 409.</li> </ul>
	If you assign to this field any value other than <b>No</b> <b>validation</b> , the field is surrounded by red dashes in Data Entry mode. If the user's response does not meet the validation criteria, the field remains surrounded by red dashes. Your system administrator determines if a user can save a screen with invalid data.
Caption	Enter text to describe this item on the data entry screen. After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
	Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Calculated field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.

### Using the Formula Field

You can copy a sample calculation into the **Formula** field by clicking the **Examples** field and selecting an operation from the drop down list. For example, if you click on **Examples Add two numbers (X+Y)**, **{X}+{Y}** appears in this field.

Calculation	
<u>F</u> ormula:	{X}+{Y}
<u>E</u> xamples	
Add two numbers (X + Y)	

Next, replace the variables with fields on the screen. Be sure to select the curly brackets ({}) as well as the letter between them. Then, when the user enters data into those fields, the calculation is performed using the current field values.

If a calculated field tries to perform a numerical calculation with a value that is blank or contains letters,  $_{NaN}$  appears in the field. ( $_{NaN}$  stands for "not a number.")

If a calculated field tries to divide by zero, Infinity appears.

**WARNING!** If the user does not replace *all* variables with a field or a number, when the content is validated, validation will fail.

To do this, follow these steps.

- 1. Select the first variable to replace. To continue the example, select **{X}**.
- 2. Click the **Select Field** button. A screen appears listing appropriate fields on the Data Design screen.

🗱 Select a Field or Group
Select a Field or Group
⊡
- ab title (Insert the title of the book)
genre
ab price
Paperback
Field1
Field2
ab Field3
Field4 (current field)
ab Name

Select a field to replace {X}. When you do, the field name replaces {X} in the Formula field.

WARNING!If a variable appears more than once in a formula (for example, {x} \* number(<br/>{x} &lt := {Y}) + {Y} \* number( {x} &gt : {Y}), you only need to replace<br/>the first occurrence it - eWebeditPro+XML will replace the subsequent<br/>occurrences for you.

4. Continue replacing all variables in the formula.

#### Notes

- If an XML document contains several occurrences of a field that is referenced in a formula, the value is derived as follows:
  - When using the XPath functions sum() and count(), all values with the field name are considered. For example, a document includes three books whose prices are \$10, \$20 and \$30. In this case, sum's value is \$60.
  - When using all other functions, the first value is used. For example, a document includes three books whose prices are \$10, \$20 and \$30. If a calculation formula refers to <price>, its value is \$10.
- You can replace a variable with a number instead of a field. For example, replace {x} \* {y} with .../price \* 1.15.
- The expression can be complex, such as (round(Field1 \* 0.80) + (1 div Field2)) - 2.
- You can use a string expression that creates a text message. For example, to calculate a full name from its parts: concat( title, ' ', givenname, ' ', familyname), which could produce "Dr. Jonathan Smythe".

#### **Referencing Other Calculated Fields**

A calculated field can only reference other calculated fields that appear before it in a document. For example, a document collects a series of numbers.

- One calculated field counts the number of numbers.
- Another totals their values.
- A third computes the average by dividing the total by the count.

In this example, you must place the third field below or to the right of the first two fields. Calculated fields that are defined later in a document do not appear in the Select Field or Group dialog.

#### **Explanation of Examples**

The following table explains the standard examples that appear in the **Examples** drop-down list of the Calculated Field dialog. Note

that your system administrator can customize the list, so it may not match what is below.

Example Field Text	Example Field Formula	Description
Add two numbers	${X} + {Y}$	Add the value in the first field (X) to the value in the second field (Y).
Subtract two numbers	{X} - {Y}	Subtract the value in the second field (Y) from the value in the first field (X).
Multiply two numbers	{X} * {Y}	Multiply the value in the first field (X) by the value in the second field (Y).
Divide two numbers	format-number( {X} div {Y} ,'0.###')	Divide the value in the first field (X) by the value in the second field (Y).
Format as a percentage	format-number({X} div {Y} ,'#0%')	Determine what percentage one number (X) is of another (Y). For example, if {X}=10 and {Y}=100, the result of the calculation is 10%.
Absolute value of a number	{X} * (number({X} > 0)*2-1)	The number regardless of the sign (negative or positive).
Minimum of two numbers	{X} * number( {X} &It= {Y} ) + {Y} * number( {X} > {Y})	The smaller of two field values.
Maximum of two numbers	{X} * number( {X} >= {Y} ) + {Y} * number( {X} < {Y})	The larger of two field values.
Zero if subtraction is negative	({X} - {Y}) * number(({X} - {Y}) > 0)	Subtract one number (Y) from another (X). If the difference is less than zero, insert zero.

Example Field Text	Example Field Formula	Description
Multiply by another number if checkbox is checked	<pre>{X} * ( {Y} * number( {Z} ='true') + number( {Z} !='true'))</pre>	<ul> <li>X is a numeric field.</li> <li>Y is another numeric field to multiply by X if a checkbox is checked.</li> <li>Z is the checkbox.</li> <li>For example, {X}=2 and {Y}=3</li> <li>if the checkbox is checked, the result is 2 * 3, which is 6</li> <li>If the checkbox is not checked, the result is 2</li> </ul>
Round a decimal number	round({X})	Rounds the number to the nearest integer. For example, round(3.14). The result is 3.
Round up a decimal number	ceiling({X})	Returns the smallest integer that is greater than the number. For example, ceiling(3.14). The result is 4. For negative numbers: ceiling(-3.14) = -3
Round down a decimal number	floor({X})	Returns the largest integer that is not greater than the number argument For example, floor(3.14). The result is 3. For negative numbers: floor(-3.14) = -4
Format decimal number 0.00	format-number( {X} ,'0.00')	Rounds a value either up or down to the hundredth place. As examples, 100 becomes 100.00, and 3.14159265 becomes 3.14.
Total numeric values from multiple fields	sum( {X}[text()]   {Y}[text()]   {Z}[text()] ))	Add the values in all referenced fields. Only elements that contain a value are summed. Empty elements are excluded.

Example Field Text	Example Field Formula	Description
Total a list of numeric values	sum( {X}[text()] )	Total all values in a single repeating field. Here's an example. Plain Text Field properties
		Name: Miles
		Allow: more than one
		Validation: non-negative whole number
		XML Data
		<root></root>
		<miles>89</miles>
		<miles>12</miles>
		<miles>23</miles>
		<miles>19</miles>
		sum(Miles) equals 89+12+23+19=143
		Only elements that contain a value are summed. Empty elements are excluded.

Example Field Text	Example Field Formula	Description
Average a list of numeric values	format-number(sum( {X}[text()] ) div count( {X} ),'0.###')	Calculate the average of all values in a single repeating field.
		To continue the example from the <b>Total a list of numeric values field</b> (above):
		Plain Text Field properties
		Name: Miles
		Allow: more than one
		Validation: non-negative whole number
		XML Data
		<root></root>
		<miles>89</miles>
		<miles>12</miles>
		<miles>23</miles>
		<miles>19</miles>
		Average=89+12+23+19=143
		divided by the number of values (4)= 35.75
		Only elements that contain a value are summed. Empty elements are excluded.
Count the number of values in a list	count( {X} )	Calculate the number of values in a single repeating field.
		To continue the example from the <b>Total a list of numeric values field</b> (above):
		Plain Text Field properties
		Name: Miles
		Allow: more than one
		Validation: non-negative whole number
		XML Data
		<root></root>
		<pre><miles>89</miles></pre>
		<miles>12</miles>
		<miles>23</miles>
		<miles>19</miles>
		Count = 4

Example Field Text	Example Field Formula	Description
Lowercase text	translate( {X} ,'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST UVWXYZ','abcdefghijklmnopqrs tuvwxyz')	Replace all uppercase characters with the lowercase version of that character
Uppercase text	translate( {X} ,'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',' ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU VWXYZ')	Replace all lowercase characters with the uppercase version of that character
Remove extra spaces	normalize-space( {X} )	Remove extra space characters from content\
Concatenate text	concat( {X} , ', ' , {Y} )	Link text strings together into a single string. For example, concat('The',' ','XML') yields The XML.
Size of a text string	string-length( {X} )	Count the number of characters in a selected field's value. For example, if the referenced field's value is Hello, string-length = 5.



Insert a calendar field when you want the end user to enter a date. The user must click a date from an online, interactive calendar.

S	Select Date 🛛 🗙						
	J	anua	ary	•	20	06	-
	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	29	30	31	1	2	3	4
		OK.			( (	Cance	el

Because users cannot enter digits, a standard date format is ensured.

The date is stored as a standard XML date (in the format yyyy-mmdd), and localized to the computer of the user viewing it.

## **Dialog Box**

Calendar Field		×
Nam <u>e</u> :	Field1	□ I <u>n</u> dexed
Djsplay name:	Field 1	
<u>D</u> efault value:		
Use		Allow
May not be removed		Only one
C <u>M</u> ay be removed		○ More than one
<u>Caption:</u>	Text	
		OK Cancel

Fields on the Calendar Field Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field.
	Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;'"{}[]\`~) into this field.
	See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide.
	The <b>Indexed</b> field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator has set up your system.
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.

Description
If you want this screen to have a default date when the user first sees it, click the calendar button to the right and select a date. The user can change the date in Data Entry mode.
Note: If you enter a default date, you cannot later remove it. You can change it. If necessary, you can delete the field and enter a new one.
See "The Use Field" on page 407
See "The Allow Field" on page 408
Enter text to describe this item on the data entry screen. After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.
Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the Calendar field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.



Use an ImageOnly field to place an icon on the screen, which the user in Data Entry mode can click to insert an image into the Web content. You can insert a default image if desired.

To let the user insert any file, such as a Microsoft Word document, use a File Link field. See Also: "File Link Field ()" on page 405

## Using a Image Only Field in Data Entry Mode

In Data Entry mode, the image's caption appears, followed by a

default image (if you specify one) and this icon: . When the user clicks the icon, this screens described in "Inserting Images" on page 232 appear. See that section for more information.

### Note

The user can only insert a file whose extension is defined within the <validext> element of the configdataentry.xml file. Your system administrator can help you do this.

### **Dialog Box**

Image Only Field	×
<u>N</u> ame:	Field1 Indexed
Djsplay name:	Field 1
Use May no <u>t</u> be removed May be removed	Allow © <u>D</u> nly one © <u>M</u> ore than one
Default Image Location:	
<u>C</u> aption:	From File
	OK Cancel

Fields on the Image Only Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;""{}[]\[`~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377
Indexed	Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide. The <b>Indexed</b> field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator has set up your system.

Field	Description
Display name	Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.
Use	See "The Use Field" on page 407
Allow	See "The Allow Field" on page 408
Default Image Location	If desired, you can insert a default image, which might be the most common image or simply a reminder that an image needs to be inserted.
	To help find the image, click the <b>From File</b> button and navigate to image file.
	You can only insert an image file whose extension appears between the <validext> tags in the configdatadesign.xml file. For example:</validext>
	<validext>gif,jpg,png,jpeg,jpe,doc,txt </validext>



Use a File Link field to place an icon on the screen which the user in Data Entry mode can use to link to any file, such as a Microsoft Word document or a .gif image file. (You can also use an Image Only field to let the user insert an image. See Also: "Image Only Field ()" on page 403)

### Using a File Link Field in Data Entry Mode

In Data Entry mode, the file link field's caption appears, followed by this icon: When the user clicks the icon, this screen prompts the user to specify a file and a caption for it.

**NOTE** The user can only insert a file whose extension is defined within the <validext> element of the configdataentry.xml file. Your system administrator can help you do this.

Select File	×
File Location:	http://localhost/ewebeditpro4/samples/as
	<u>F</u> rom File
File Description:	File Link
	0K Cancel

## **Dialog Box**

File Link Field	
<u>N</u> ame:	🗖 Indexed
Djsplay name:	
Use	Allow
May not be removed	⊙ <u>O</u> nly one
O May be removed	C More than one
Default File Location:	
	<u>F</u> rom File
Defa <u>u</u> lt File Description:	
<u>C</u> aption:	
	OK Cancel

Fields on the File Link Field Dialog

Field	Description
Name	Enter the name of the field. Note that you cannot enter spaces nor most special characters (!@#\$%^&*()+=<>,.:;""{}[]\`~) into this field. See Also: "The Name Field's Default Value" on page 377

Description	
Check if you want to index this field. For more information, see "Indexing the Fields of a Data Design Document" in the Supporting the Data Designer chapter of the Developer Reference Guide.	
The indexed field may or may not appear, depending on how your administrator has set up your system.	
Enter the text that appears when a user hovers the cursor over this field.	
See "The Use Field" on page 407	
See "The Allow Field" on page 408	
If desired, you can insert a default link, which can be the most common link or simply an example. To help find the link, click the <b>From File</b> button and navigate to file. You can only insert a file whose extension appears between the <validext> element of</validext>	
<pre>the configdatadesign.xml file. For example: <validext>gif,jpg,png,jpeg,jpe,pdf,doc </validext></pre>	
If desired, enter text that the user will be able to click on to access the linked file.	
Enter text to describe this item on the data entry screen. After you insert this field onto the screen, you can use <b>eWebeditPro+XML</b> 's formatting capabilities to modify its size, font, color, and other attributes.	
Note: The Caption field only appears on this dialog when you create the File Link field. If you later try to edit the field, the Caption field is not on the dialog. However, you can edit the Caption text within the editor.	

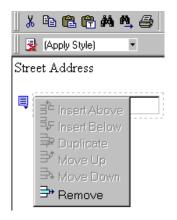
## **Fields that Appear on Several Dialogs**

The Use Field

Click **May not be removed** if this field must be included on the screen. Otherwise, click **May be removed**.

If you check **May be removed**, when this field appears on a data entry screen, an icon ( $\blacksquare$ ) appears to the left of the field.

If the user clicks the icon, a dropdown menu provides an option to remove the field, as shown below.



If the user removes the field, add *field display name* replaces the field on the data entry screen to indicate that the field was removed and can be added if necessary.

For example, if the field's display name is street address, and the

user removes the field, add Street Address appears in place of the field.

#### Νοτε

The menu icon  $(\blacksquare)$  can also indicate that the user can add instances of a field (see the Allow field, below). So, if a field is required, the icon could appear but omit a **Remove** option.

#### The Allow Field

Check **more than one** if you want to let the user entering data add instances of this field. Otherwise, check **only one**.

For example, if a screen is collecting names and addresses and you want to let the user enter several of them, check **more than one**.

If you check **more than one**, when this field appears in Data Entry mode, appears to the left of the field, as shown below.

∃<sup>1</sup> Insert Above ₹F Insert Below ቅ Duplicate ➡ Move Up 🗗 Move Down 🕈 Remove

If the user entering data clicks  $\blacksquare$ , a menu appears (shown above), which lets the user add instances of the field to the screen.

#### NOTE

The menu icon ( $\blacksquare$ ) can also indicate that the user can remove a field (see the Use field, above). So, even if a field allows only one instance, the icon could appear but the menu would only display **Remove**.

## **Custom Validation**

The Plain Text and Calculation field dialogs feature a validation section (illustrated below).

-(	-Validation		
	Validation		
	No validation		
		Contras Velidadas	
l		C <u>u</u> stom Validation	

You can use the validation feature to ensure the following about the user's input.

- The data type the default types are
  - text
  - URL

- whole number
- decimal number
- floating point number (Floating point includes scientific notation, so is appropriate for scientific numbers. Decimals usually suffice for business numbers.)

#### **NOTE** Your system administrator may customize the choices.

- The field value has one of the following relationships with another field, a number, or an expression the default expressions are
  - between two values (either another field or a number that you specify)
  - less than
  - equal to
  - not equal to
  - maximum length (usually for text responses)

**NOTE** Your system administrator may customize the choices.

If the user's response fails to meet the criteria, you can compose an error message that appears when the data does not satisfy the criterion. Your system administrator determines if a user can save the invalid data.

When the **Custom Validation** button is clicked, the Custom Validation dialog appears.

Custom Validation		×
Data Type		
Data <u>T</u> ype:	Whole number	V
Validation		
<u>C</u> ondition:		
		Select Field
<u>E</u> xamples		
		•
Error <u>M</u> essage:		
	1	
		OK Cancel

- The **Data Type** field is the value's basic type, for example, text number or URL.
- The **Condition** field displays the validation logic.
- The **Examples** drop-down list shows validation expressions that the data design creator can apply to the field.
- Any **Error Message** displays in Data Entry mode when the user inserts an invalid value.

When the **Select Field** button is clicked, the Select a Field or Group dialog appears.

Select a Field or Group		_ 🗆 ×
Select a Field or Group		
<ul> <li>Jook (Books) (1 or mor genre</li> <li>Jook (Books) (1 or mor</li> <li>Jook (Insert the title)</li> <li>Jook (Insert the tit</li></ul>		
	ОК	Cancel

This dialog displays fields that can be inserted into the **Condition** field. Some field types, like the RichArea field, are not listed. See *Also:* "Referencing Other Calculated Fields" on page 396

<u> </u>	
-Validation	
<u>C</u> ondition:	/book

### Example of Creating Custom Validation

As an example of custom validation, assume that a field collects telephone numbers, and you want to make sure the user enters 10 digits. To accomplish this, follow these steps.

- 1. Click the Plain Text Field dialog and complete the screen.
- 2. In the validation section, click **Custom Validation**. The Custom validation screen appears.

Custom Validation		×
Data Type		
Data <u>T</u> ype:	Plain text	<b>_</b>
Validation		
<u>C</u> ondition:		
		Select Field
<u>E</u> xamples		
		<b>_</b>
Error <u>M</u> essage:	<u> </u>	
		OK Cancel

3. In the **Data Type** field, select **Whole Number** from the drop down list. This ensures that the user can only enter digits.

- Data Type	
Data <u>T</u> ype:	Plain text
- Validation	Plain text
<u>C</u> ondition:	Whole number) Decimal number Floating point number

4. Click the down arrow to the right of the **Examples** field to see sample logic.

Examples	<u>S</u> elect Field
Number between two values (X < , and , < Y)	
Must equal another number (, = X) Must not equal another number (, != X)	
Maximum text length (string-length(.) <= X)	

- 5. Click **Maximum text length...** . This option lets you specify the length of the user's response.
- 6. string-length(.) <= {x} appears in the **Condition** field.

- 7. Since you want the user's input to equal 10, remove the less than sign (<) from the calculation. Now it looks like this: string-length(.) = {x}.</p>
- 8. Replace the X with 10. Now, it looks like this: string-length(.) = {10}.
- 9. Move the cursor to the **Error Message** field and compose a relevant error message. For example: must be 10 digits.
- 10. Your screen should look like this.

Custom Validation		×
Data Type		
Data <u>T</u> ype:	Whole number	<b>_</b>
Validation		
<u>C</u> ondition:	string-length(.) = 10	
<u>E</u> xamples		Select Field
		•
Error <u>M</u> essage:	must be 10 digits	
		OK Cancel

- 11. Press **OK** and return to the **Plain Text** field dialog.
- 12. Press **OK** to save that dialog and test the validation on the phone number field. To do this, switch to Data Entry mode and enter more or fewer than 10 digits, as well as non-digit characters to verify that validation works as expected.

# **Entering Comments**

**NOTE** This feature is only available with Ektron CMS300. If you are using CMS200 and want to upgrade to CMS300, please contact your Ektron sales representative at sales@ektron.com.

**eWebeditPro+XML**'s comment feature lets you leave notes within the text as a reminder to yourself or other users. For example, you could insert a comment explaining why you are using a certain style class.

After you enter a comment, an icon appears in the text to indicate it (see illustration below). Other users editing that content will see the icon, and can click it to view and possibly update the comment.

When the content is published, the comment is invisible.

		🛃 Comment -	Microsoft Internet Explorer
In	🛃 (Apply Style)		
f	🔏 🖻 🛍 🗎 🛃 (		John,
f	Ar x <sup>2</sup> × <sub>2</sub> nbsp ©		Please review the text about updating to verify accuracy.
ľ	,		Thanks, Bill
L	XML Commer	Comment	
L	₽_=k <mark>t</mark> ron CI other editor		
L	published, t		
L	Notes can Ł		
L	feature. The		
L	clicks a tool enters the i		OK Cancel
L	other users		
L	possibly up		
	With this cc		
	moves thro		
h		🙆 Done	Sector Se

To enter a comment, follow these steps.

- 1. Move the cursor to text that needs a comment.
- 2. Click the comment toolbar button ( $\mathbb{P}$ ).
- 3. An editor pops up to accept the comment. Enter the comment and click OK.

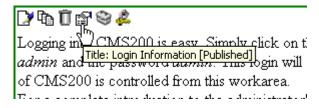
# **Appendix A: Content Statuses**

The table below describes all possible content statuses. The rest of this appendix explains each status in more detail.

Letter	Border Color	Meaning	Content state	More Information
A	green	Approved	Through the workflow and published on the Web site.	"Active Content" on page 418
0	red	Checked Out	Currently being edited. Has not been checked in.	"Checked Out Content" on page 421
I	green	Checked In	Checked in for other users to edit.	"Checked-In Content" on page 418
S	yellow	Submitted for Approval	Saved and submitted into the approval chain. See Also: "Approving/Declining Content Blocks" on page 62	"Submitted Content" on page 421
М	yellow	Marked For Deletion	Requested for deletion	"Marked for Deletion Content" on page 423
Р	grey	Pending Go Live Date	Approved but the Go Live date hasn't occurred yet	"Pending Start Date Content" on page 424

## **Active Content**

If a content block has a green border, it is live on the Web site.



When content is active, you can perform the following actions on it, depending on your permissions.

The content block's status remains active until it is checked out and changes are made to it.

Button	Name	Description	For more information, see
	Edit	Check-out the content block to change it.	"Editing a Content Block" on page 39
<b></b>	Edit Summary	Edit the brief summary used to describe the content.	"Adding a Content Block Summary" on page 53
M	Edit Metadata	Change the content block's metadata.	"Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59
Ũ	Delete	Submit a request to delete the content. If you are the last or only approver, the content is immediately deleted. <i>See Also:</i> "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198	"Deleting a Content Block" on page 42
←	Back	Go to the previous window.	

## **Checked-In Content**

If a content block has a green border, it could mean that the content block is checked in. A checked-in content block is one to

which changes were made, after which it was checked in instead of being submitted or published. When a content block is checked in, it is accessible to all users who have permissions to edit it. They can check it out and change it.

Keep in mind that the content seen on the template is not the same as the content in the editor view.



See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198

Listed below is a description of each option that you may perform on a checked in content block.

Button	Name	Description	For more information, see
	Edit	Check-out the content block to change it.	"Editing a Content Block" on page 39
	Edit Summary	Edit the brief summary used to describe the content.	"Adding a Content Block Summary" on page 53
M	Edit Metadata	Change the content block's metadata. <i>See Also:</i> "Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59	"Adding or Editing Metadata" on page 59

Button	Name	Description	For more information, see
<u>م</u>	Submit/Publish	Submit the content block into the approval chain. If you are the last approver in the approval chain, the publish button appears. If you click it, the content is immediately posted to the Web site.	
r R	View Staged/ Published	Click the <b>View Staged</b> button to view the content that has not yet been published. See Also: See Also: "Staged Content" on page 424 Click the <b>View Published</b> button to view the content that is live on the Web site. See Also: "Displays staged content." on page 26	
Ū	Delete	Submit a request to delete the content into the approval chain. If you are the last or only approver, the content is immediately deleted. <i>See Also:</i> "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198	
÷	Back	Go to the previous window.	

## **Checked Out Content**

If a content block has a red border, its status is checked out, which means another user is editing it. While in this status, no other users may edit the content.



The content block remains checked out until it is checked back in by the checking out user or your system administrator. Each option you may perform on a checked out content block is listed below.

Button	Name	Description
	Check In	Check in the content block.
da Do	View Staged/ Published	Click the <b>View Staged</b> button to view the content that has not yet been published. Click the <b>View Published</b> button to view the content that is live on the Web site. <i>See Also:</i> "Displays staged content." on page 26
←	Back	Go to the previous window.

## **Submitted Content**

A yellow border shows that a user has submitted the content block into the approval chain. The content border remains yellow until the content is published or declined. While the content is in the approval chain, no user can check it out to make changes.



See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198

Button	Name	Description
D	Submit	Submit the content block into the approval chain. See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198
B <sub>0</sub>	Publish	Approve and publish the content block to the Web site. NOTE: You have this option only if you are the last approver in the chain. See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198
<b>I</b> 8	Decline	Refuse to publish the submitted content block, and place the content into a checked-in status.

Listed below are descriptions of each toolbar button.

Button	Name	Description
	Edit	Check-out the content block and make changes to it. NOTE: If you edit the content block, you need to re-submit it to the approval chain.
da Do	View Staged/ Published	Click the <b>View Staged</b> button to view the content that has not yet been published. Click the <b>View Published</b> to view the content that is live on the Web site. See Also: "Displays staged content." on page 26
÷	Back	Go to the previous window.

## Marked for Deletion Content

Content that is Marked for Deletion has been requested to be removed from the Web site by a user. When a content block is marked for deletion, it goes through the same approval chain that a content block that is submitted to be published goes through. If the content makes it through the entire approval chain, the content is deleted from the Web site.

See Also: "Example of an Approval Chain" on page 198

The table below describes each of the toolbar buttons.

Button	Name	Description
Ū	Delete	Approve the deletion request. NOTE: If you are the last user in the approval chain, the content is deleted when you click this.

Button	Name	Description
<b>1</b> 8	Decline	Refuse the deletion request. This sends the content block back into a checked-in status.
←	Back	Go to the previous window.

## Pending Start Date Content

Content that is pending a Go Live date has been approved, but the date and time when it is scheduled to go live has not occurred yet.

You cannot perform any action on a content block that is pending a start date.

## **Staged Content**

A staged version is a version of a content block that is not published. It can be a content block that is checked in, or one that is approved but has a pending a start date.

Staging lets you make changes to an existing (or new) content block, but keep it private from the web site until you are ready to publish it.